This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

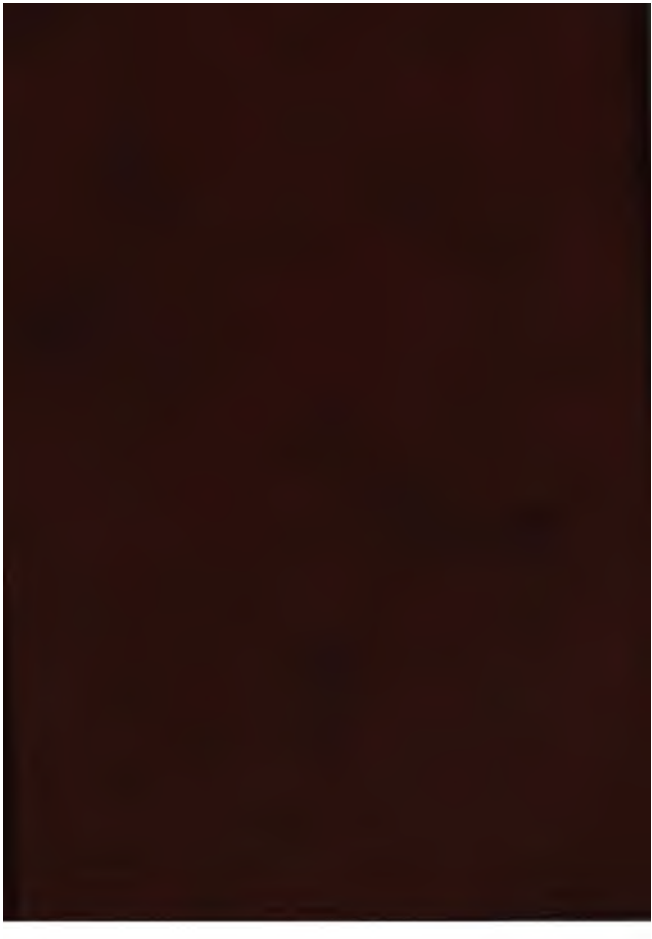
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



MANOR

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

UNIVERSAL HISTORY,

ANCIENT AND MODERN;

FROM

THE EARLIEST RECORDS OF TIME,

TO THE

GENERAL PEACE OF 1802.

IN TWENTY-FIVE VOLUMES.

BY WILLIAM MAVOR, LL.D.

VICAR OF HURLEY IN BERKSHIRE, AND CHAPLAIN TO THE EARL OF DUMFRIES.

Factorum est copia nobis.

. . . . . .

Res gestæ regumque, ducumque, et tristia bella.

VOL. XIII.

OR VOL. IV. OF THE MODERN PART.

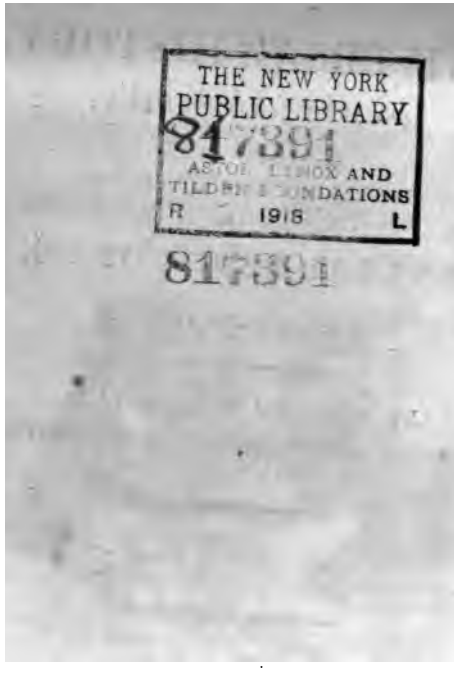
LONDON:

PRINTED FOR RICHARD PHILLIPS, 71, ST. PAUL'S CHURCH-YARD;

AND SOLD BY ALL BOOKSELLERS.

1802.

T. Gillet, Printer, Salisbury-Square.


THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
817391
ASTOR LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R 1915 L
817391

THE HISTORY OF THE *DISPERSION OF THE JEWS*; OF MODERN EGYPT; AND OF THE OTHER AFRICAN NATIONS.

By WILLIAM MAVOR, LL.D.

VICAR OF HURLEY IN BERKSHIRE, CHAPLAIN TO THE EARL OF DUMFRIES,

AUTHOR OF THE BRITISH NEPOS, &c. &c.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR RICHARD PHILLIPS, 71, ST. PAUL'S CHURCH-YARD;

AND SOLD BY ALL BOOKSELLERS.

1802.

Price 3s. 9d. in Boards, or 4s. half-bound.

TO THE RIGHT HONOURABLE

LORD VISCOUNT ASHBROOK,

THIS VOLUME,

INCLUDING

THE MODERN HISTORY OF EGYPT;

a Country in which his Lordship shared the danger and the glory of the Campaign, under Sir Ralph Abercrombie and General Hutchinson,

IS,

WITH EVERY SENTIMENT OF RESPECT,

INSCRIBED,

BY

HIS LORDSHIP'S

MOST FAITHFUL HUMBLE SERVANT,

THE EDITOR.

ONTENTS.

VOL. XIII.

	Page
he Jews - - - - - - -	1
Africa in General - -	67
he African Islands - -	105
Egypt - - -	144
ory of Abyssinia - - -	220
doms adjacent to Abyssinia -	309
and Dancali - - -	ibid.
n - - - - -	311
el - - - - - -	312
gadoxa and Brava - -	319
Kingdoms and States on the Coast of Zanguebar - -	321
linda - - - -	322
mbasa and Quiloa - -	326
sambique - - -	333
ala - - - -	336
nomotapa - - -	341
msmugi - - - -	350
ffraria - - - -	352
ottentots - - -	357

MODERN HISTORY.

DISPERSION OF THE JEWS.

THE ancient part of the Jewish history was concluded with an account of the siege and demolition of the temple and city of Jerusalem; of the dreadful slaughter of many of the inhabitants which ensued; and of the dispersion and servitude of the wretched survivors. These events exactly corresponded, in every particular, to the divine prediction of Jesus, the long promised and expected Messiah, whom the Jews rejected and crucified. In continuing the Jewish history, we shall commence our narrative with an account of those who retired from Jerusalem, immediately after the destruction of their city and temple by the Romans, and dispersed themselves through the countries of Turkey, Persia, Egypt, Palestine, and the eastern parts of the world; and we shall conclude our relation with a recital of the principal occurrences which befel those Jews that migrated into Italy, Spain, Portugal, France, England, Germany and other provinces of Europe.*

* Besides these distinctions, the European Jews divide themselves into northern and southern; the former consisting of those who for many ages have resided in Germany, Denmark, Poland, and other northern provinces; and the latter, those in Spain, Portugal, &c.

The history of the eastern Jews is ver
scure and perplexed. The rest of that peop
greatly ignorant of what happened to thei
thren in those remote countries, and hav
ceived very imperfect intelligence from th
They who survived the demolition of the te
and city of Jerusalem, and escaped the fu
the Roman soldiers, retired, some into Ga
but a much greater number into Egypt an
rene. The learned Dr. Lightfoot, however
jectured that the Jewish sanhedrim was
abolished, but only removed to Jamnia, and
thence to Tiberias, where it subsisted til
death of Judah the saint; and that acad
were erected in other cities, whilst the natio
still governed by a patriarch. But all this
on the bare authority of their traditions, w
in what concerned the Jewish honour, are n
be depended on, and seem, in this particul
be entirely false; for it does not appear, th
Romans left to that court the least shad
power or authority. On the contrary, we
that the whole nation, on account of thei
quent and bloody rebellions, was grievousl
pressed; and it is not probable, that a p
become so odious and detestable, would be
mitted such a supreme court, and one v
had so great and extensive authority. Be
if Titus had made any concession of this n
to the Jewish people, Josephus, as well fo
honour of that emperor, as for the credit o
nation, would, doubtless, have noticed it.
Domitian is known to have hated the Jew
much to have allowed them such a signal
for he was rather a persecutor than a f
benefactor of that people. It is, there

n of the emperor Nerva, his successor, much more favourable to the Jews, that to look for the first appearance and insti- n of these Jewish patriarchs. During the preceding reigns, they were treated with lty and oppression; nor can they be sup- d, under those several calamities, to have vered themselves so far from their disper- , as to have been in a condition to obtain this dignity, much less to raise it to such a de- of authority.

With respect to the patriarchs of Judea, they generally considered to have been of the onic or Levitical race, and not of the tribe udah, which, in these parts, was either extin- hed, or at least so far depressed, that they d not resume their former functions and er; and any such attempt would only have ught upon them the resentment of the Ro- n nation. That the Priests and Levites, how- , should be permitted to assume the power nstructing the people, and, for that purpose, rect schools, to appoint masters, and, at th, to instal one over the rest, with the title losh Abboth, or head of the fathers, and to ch the Greek word patriarch corresponds, s very probable; for neither their tribe, ch was excluded the regal dignity, nor their e, which was then confined to matters of re- n, could give any umbrage to the Roman er. The authority which they acquired over people committed to their charge, owed its and gradual increase to their great reputa- for learning and piety, and principally con- d in the decision of matters which related eligion, and in framing the wisest and most

effectual regulations for the re-establishment and permanency of it. The authority of the patriarchs, however, has been greatly exaggerated by the Jewish writers, in order to repel a powerful argument urged by the Christians, that the sceptre or regal power mentioned by Jacob, had departed from them. Subordinate officers were appointed under them, whose business it was to carry their decisions into effect, and to regulate other affairs within the cognizance of the patriarchs.

Having determined the most probable era of the commencement of the patriarchate, it will be necessary to observe, that the celebrated city of Tiberias, founded by Herod, and situated on the lake of that name, was chosen for the patriarchal seat. In this city, also, a Jewish academy was soon after erected, which became famous for its learned men, and particularly for the compilers of the Mishnah*.

In the next century, the Jews rebelled under the emperor Trajan, which can only be ascribed to their impatience and hatred of a foreign yoke. Their resentment raged with incredible fury, notwithstanding the low condition to which they had before been reduced. The Jews at Cyrene, who had been settled there for some time, and had become powerful, were the first to rebel, and gained some considerable advantages over the Cyrenians and Egyptians. These fled immediately to Alexandria, and alarmed that city to such a degree, that all the Jews found in it were massacred. Those at Cy-

A. D. 115.

* The Mishnah is a code or body of oral traditions, founded on the writings and ordinances of Moses, &c. The Greeks called it Deuteronomy, or the second law.

rene

rene, provoked at such a dreadful reprisal, chose one Andrea for their principal. Under this leader, they killed two hundred and twenty thousand inhabitants, and fought many desperate battles with the Romans, under M. Turbo, whom Trajan sent with a powerful army, to reduce them. They laid waste and depopulated the whole country of Lybia, and Adrian was afterwards under the necessity of sending a colony to re-people it.

In the next year, the Jews of Mesopotamia appeared in arms, and in such force, that the inhabitants of the whole country feared for their safety. This obliged the emperor to send L. Quietus, at that time the greatest general the Romans had. He slew great numbers of the insurgents, and again subjected the rest to the Roman power; but lest they should re-assemble, and rebel after his departure, Trajan appointed him governor of Palestine, that he might keep them in awe.

Soon after, the Jews in the isle of Cyprus revolted, and destroyed two hundred and forty thousand of the inhabitants. Trajan, therefore, sent Adrian with a powerful army, who with difficulty subdued them; and they were afterwards, by an edict, banished the island.

The next insurrection was raised by their false messiah, or caziba, or, as he called himself, Barchochab. This man taking advantage of the resentment with which the minds of the Jews were at that time inflamed, on account of a colony which Adrian had sent to rebuild the city of Jerusalem, and of a prohibition to circumcise their children, became the principal of the Jewish nation, and proclaimed himself their long ex-

pected Messiah. He was one of those ba
that infested Judea, and committed all ki
violence against the Romans. Having,
ever, become powerful, he was chosen ki
the Jews, and acknowledged as the true Me
He chose for his precursor, the celebrated A
who being in high repute among the Jew
chief of their sanhedrim, declared him to
star which had been predicted to arise out
cob. An army of two hundred thousan
was immediately raised, and Bither becan
place of their retreat, and the capital of th
kingdom.

Barchochab, however, did not declar
A. D. against the Romans, till Adrian hac
134. ted Egypt. When the Roman em
was informed of the great numb
banditti, and other struggling Jews, wh
flocked to the standard of Barchochab, h
T. Rufus with a numerous and powerful
of troops against them; but these forces
not sufficiently strong to prevent the im
from gaining advantages over him, and
destroying great numbers of converted
Romans, and Christians. At length Juli
verus, who was then in England, and w
teemed the most consummate general
age and nation, was deputed to comman
troops destined to act against the insur
Not thinking it prudent or safe to oppo
once so vast and powerful an army, he con
himself with partial engagements, and wi
feating detachments of their forces. By
means, he at length inclosed the enemy
ther, cut off all their supplies, and laid si
the place. The insurgents defended them

with great bravery, and put Triphon, a famous rabbi, to death, for only proposing to surrender the town. The besieged, however, could not long withstand the repeated and vigorous attacks made upon the place. In one of these assaults, Barchochab was killed, and Bither soon after surrendered. A dreadful carnage of the Jews immediately ensued, and their historians affirm, that a greater number of their countrymen was destroyed within the walls of Bither, than was the whole amount of their nation when they emigrated from the land of Egypt. Akiba, after suffering a severe imprisonment, was doomed by the conquerors to a cruel death; and with him, say the Jews, perished the glory of the Jewish law. In this war, the Romans lost a great number of troops; but the number of the Jews that died by the sword, was five hundred and eighty thousand, besides those who perished by famine, fire, and divers other calamities.

The Roman general having thus terminated the war, the emperor Adrian seized the advantage of this peaceful interval to perfect his design of rebuilding Jerusalem. A. D. 131. But it was not the intention of Adrian to reinstate the Jews in their ancient city, which would only have occasioned more frequent revolts. On the contrary, by this action, he intended to mortify and humble the spirit of that stubborn people. For that purpose, he caused the ancient monuments of religion in the temple to be effaced and destroyed, and statues of pagan idols to be substituted in their room; and he likewise issued a severe *edict, which* expressly prohibited *the Jews from entering* the city. Not, however, *satisfied with these acts* of profanation and seve

rit

rity, Adrian gave orders, that great numbers of these unhappy people should be annually sold like horses, and that the rest should be banished into Egypt. By these means, he effectually removed the Jewish inhabitants from Jerusalem; and this state became the most wretched and deplorable that can possibly be imagined. Excluded entrance into the holy city, their ancient inheritance, they surveyed Jerusalem from the neighbouring mountains, and wept over it. Frequently did the men and women ascend the Mount of Olives, and with their clothes rent, their hair dishevelled, and in all the ecstacy of grief and despair, bewail the ruin and decay of their once splendid and celebrated metropolis.

Whilst the western Jews, however, were thus experiencing all the miseries of oppression and violence, a much better fate attended their brethren in the east. Trajan, indeed, had carried his arms against them as far as Mesopotamia, but after Adrian was invested with the purple, he consented that the Euphrates should be the boundary of the Roman empire; the Jews, therefore, that resided beyond that river, were, in general, not concerned in the war which we have been relating. A few of them, however, passed the Euphrates, that they might assist their brethren in Judea against the Roman power, but unhappily their aid served no other purpose, than to increase the number of the slain, and to grace the triumph of the conquerors.

In this century, Judah Hakkadosh, the son of Simeon, surnamed the Just, and the third patriarch of the Jews, compiled the Mishnah. He succeeded his father in the dignity, and enjoyed the patriarchate forty-five years. The great

put

putation and authority, which his learning and abilities had procured him, made him so arrogant and assuming, that he by no means deserved the title of saint, which was conferred on him. Judah Hakkadosh was succeeded in the patriarchate by his son Gamaliel, who confirmed his father's Mishnah, and died, A. D. 229. His son Judah did nothing worthy of notice, excepting that he left his dignity to his son Hillel the second, a person of great merit and learning. This patriarch was the first who computed the years from the Creation. He also invented the cycle of 19 years, to cause the course of the sun and moon to agree. Before his death, Hillel was converted to the Christian faith; and Judah his son succeeded him in the patriarchal dignity. On his demise, his son Hillel the third, became patriarch of Judea, and governed the Jewish church till the year 385. He was succeeded by his son Gamaliel, the fourth of that name, and the last of the patriarchal race. In 415 the emperor Theodosius deprived Gamaliel of part of his authority, and the patriarchal dignity was entirely abolished in 429, after it had continued in the same family during thirteen generations.

During the reigns of Antoninus Pius, M. Aurelius, and Commodus, the Jews were treated with great liberality and kindness; and Antoninus became not only a friend and patron of their nation, but also a convert to their religion. An edict of Adrian, however, which prohibited the circumcision of the Jewish children, being still in force, they grew so impatient under this restraint, that they appeared in arms, and obliged the emperor to repeal it, and to restore to them the free use of their religious ceremonies.

'V

The emperor Constantine was under the n
cessity of enacting several severe laws again
the Jews, to prevent their making proselytes, an
to suppress their insolence towards the Christian
Many false and absurd accounts are related b
historians, relative to the conduct of this emp
ror towards the Jewish people. The design
Constantine was neither to persecute them, n
to compel them to embrace the christian faith
on the contrary, his only aim was to preve
that liberty and indulgence, which had been a
lowed them, from becoming subservient to th
detriment and disgrace of christianity. It wa
however, in the reign of Constantine, that th
Jews, who had become numerous in Persia, an
having been treated with kindness and liberalit
by many of the Persian monarchs, had acquire
great power and influence at that court, raise
a dreadful persecution against the eastern Chri
tians. By their instigations, the Christians we
slaughtered, the churches demolished, and eve
trace of christianity was nearly obliterate
These destructive and sanguinary proceedin
were intended, as they said, to revenge the i
sults and indignities which the Jewish peop
were made to suffer in the Roman empire.

But their conduct towards the Christians d
not go long unpunished. Constans succeede
his father in the empire, and observing the ins
lence of the Jews, and the indignant manner
which they treated the Christians, found himse
under the necessity of using them with severit
What, however, incensed him most against ther
was the treacherous conduct of the Jewish inh
bitants of Diocæsarea, in Palestine. The Je
of that place taking the advantage of the er
pero

; his army through Judea, defeated the
s Jews, and rased Diocæsarea. The
being a Christian, and also inflamed
ntment against the Jews for their
',not only revived the laws which
passed against that people, dur-
former reigns, but enacted others still
ere. Every Jew that married a Chris-
ircumcised a slave, was punished with
Not only were they prohibited from en-
rusalem, but even the viewing it at a
was to be purchased with money.
Julian the apostate, the Jews received
sible marks of favour and distinction.
nly exempted them from taxes, and al-
em the free and undisturbed exercise of
igion, but permitted them to rebuild
nple, and furnished them with money
erials for the work. These signal fa-
idered the Jews haughty and insolent to-

A. D. 353.

Jews were com to from their pr
A. D. 363. ceedings, and the predictions of our Sa
viour respecting the temple and city o
Jerusalem acquired additional force fro
this abortive attempt.

During the reigns of Valentinian and Valen
the Jews had full liberty of conscience allowe
them; and their patriarchs were restored to th
enjoyment of their ancient privileges. Havin
been kindly and liberally treated, however, fo
a great length of time, they became so insolen
and seditious, that the emperor Theodosius th
second, a mild, generous, and equitable prince
was under the necessity of punishing them, tha
he might suppress their pride and turbulence
The Jews used the Christians with insults an
indignities; and the Christians retaliated upo
them by burning their synagogues and house
and causing many of them to be put to death
The emperor therefore issued several edicts, ex
pressly forbidding the Christians to persecute th
Jews on account of their religion, and prohibit
ing the Jews from offering any contemptuous in
sults to the established church.

The Jews of Alexandria, who are said to have
amounted to one hundred thousand, had fre
quent disturbances with the Christians, which
generally terminated in bloodshed. Cyril, the
bishop of that city, was extremely embittered
against them, and threatened them with eccles
astical execution. The Jews, however, knowing
that Orestes, the governor of Alexandria, was
their friend and patron, despised the threats o
the bishop, and resolved to attack the Christians
in the middle of the night. For this purpose
they sent several of their people through the
streets

ity, who cried out that the great
flames. The Christians hearing
me out unarmed; and the Jews
themselves by some peculiar
iately attacked the Chris-
great numbers of them. A. D.
rised of these proceedings, 415.
o be righted by the civil power,
iself at the head of the Christians,
ir synagogues, which he appro-
ise of the church. He then gave
be plundered, and compelled the
he city, almost naked.
of the bishop highly exasperated
ould not brook such an infringe-
hority, and was grieved that so
of inhabitants had been expelled
people also declared against these
the bishop, and would have
have submitted himself to the
this he absolutely refused to do.
, taking the Gospel in his hand,
by threats to effect a reconcilia-
g Orestes obstinate and inflexible,
a regiment of monks, to the num-
hundred, to descend from the
to assault the prefect in his cha-
accordingly done, and the go-
unded in the head, and covered
uld certainly have been killed, had
un to his assistance, and rescued
hands of the monks. This tu-
eased, Orestes caused one of the
offenders, named Ammonius, to
; and he sent an account of the
on to his court. Cyril also wrote

christian churches. The ill-timed zeal and presumption of Cyril are visible in all these proceedings, and his conduct has been justly blamed by every impartial person.

In the west, the Jews under the government of Honorius enjoyed the full exercise of their religion. That emperor had enacted a law, which displayed his liberal and extensive views, and which imported, that the real glory of a prince consisted in permitting all his subjects the full and peaceable enjoyment of their rights and privileges, even though he could not agree with them in matters of religion. Pursuant to this decree, he expressly prohibited the destruction of synagogues, or the appropriation of them to any other purpose; and he also commanded, that the Jews should not be compelled to violate the observance of their sabbath, on account of the public service. On the other hand, that he might prevent them from abusing their liberty, he ordered them to build no new synagogues, and to make no proselyt

A. D. 412.

that island were two consider- A. D.
ns. In the one, the Christian 428.
had his residence, and which was
ted the Jews; who were generally pu-
with sudden and miraculous death, if
ntured to enter it. The other was chiefly
d by Jews, who enjoyed very consider-
d lucrative offices; and Theodosius, the
nt of the synagogue, and a doctor of the
as the principal person in the island.
having become bishop of Minorca, was
ersuaded by Orosius, who had returned
erusalem, laden with miraculous relics,
mpt the conversion of the Jews. They
nced with private discourses, and then
led to public conferences, which were held
synagogue. The Christians finding that
rish women intended to assault them, pro-
or their defence. A tumult ensued, the
iences of which were, that the synagogue
stroyed, and nothing preserved, besides
ks and plate. The bishop, however, ex-
such a number of miracles, that their
t men began to relent, and, in the course
t days, most of the Jews were converted
Christian faith, and their synagogue be-
church. But some, who continued ob-
and untractable, concealed themselves in
s, till hunger compelled them to quit
lace of retreat; and others leaving all
roperty behind them, sought an asylum
ign countries; all which plainly demon-
, that compulsory means had been used to
e a conversion.

m the irruption of the Vandals into the
n empire, it might have been expected,

that the Jews would have been worse treated than others of the people, by that fierce and barbarous nation. But they enjoyed the same privileges, and only participated in the common misfortunes, which are the usual concomitants of great revolutions. They were allowed the unrestrained exercise of religion; and on the payment of a tribute, they were permitted the freedom of commerce. They were, however, prohibited the enjoyment of titular dignities and of civil and military offices; all which were forbidden them by the Roman emperors. Theodoric, in particular, protected them against the Christian zealots, and would permit no compulsory means to be used for their conversion. He reproved the senate for suffering a synagogue to be burned at Rome, and reprimanded the clergy of Milan for seizing another. The Genoese were about to deprive them of the privileges, which, for a long time, they had enjoyed among them; but the Jews had recourse to Theodoric, who permitted them to rebuild their synagogues, and restored to them the free exercise of their civil and religious rights.

In Persia a violent persecution was raised against the Jews, which historians tell us continued for seventy-three years; during which time the synagogues were shut, the observance of the sabbath was suppressed, and their schools and temples were appropriated by the magi. [illegible] of his disciples, were [illegible] suffered death with wonderful [illegible]; but the Jewish youth, [illegible] to the pleasures of life, [illegible] to forsake their religion, [illegible] to be followed.

The

sixth century commenced with a persecu-
the Jews of the dispersion, and of the
es in the east, by Cavades, a prince of a
and imperious disposition, who intended
pel all his subjects, Christians, Jews, and
to embrace the Persian religion. This
ation was extremely violent. The cele-
Meir, a learned rabbi, declared war
the Persian monarch, and we are told,
ith four hundred men only he successfully
ded against him for some years; but he
erwards defeated and put to death. The
ns then entered the city, in which Zeutra,
ief of the captivity, resided, and having
red it, hanged that prince and the presi-
f the council on a bridge. The fa-
of Zeutra betook themselves to A. D.
and his son and heir retired into 522.
, where he became chief of the sanhedrim.
sroes the great, however, who succeeded
les in the kingdom, treated the Jews with
reater rigour and severity than his prede-
had done. They endeavoured to obtain
vour of this prince, by persuading him to
off negotiations for peace with the emperor
nian, which were then in great forwardness.
his purpose, they promised Chosroes, that
would consent to continue the war, they
assist him in making himself master of
alem, one of the richest cities in the world.
roes, therefore, entering into their treache-
lesign, broke off negotiations for peace A. D.
the emperor, and prepared to carry 539.
roject into execution. The Persian
rch, however, was soon informed, that the
ns who had been employed in assisting to

obtain possession of Jerusalem, had been seiz
by order of the government, and, after making
full discovery of their design and abettors, ha
been put to death. But this information did n
deter Chosroes from prosecuting the war; whi
was carried on with great vigour, and many su
cessful inroads were made into Syria and Pale
tine. The Jews, however, in those parts, shar
the common calamities, nor were they treat
with less severity than the rest of the inhabitan
of the conquered countries. Their academi
were shut, their love of learning became exti
guished, and their chief was obliged to remo
into Judea.

They recovered their liberty, however, soo
after, when Hormisdas the third ascended th
throne; and they continued in the full enjo
ment of their civil and religious privileges, du
ing the reign of that prince. But after Chosro
the second had by parricide obtained possessi
of the Persian monarchy, the Jews took pa
with Varames the son of Chosroes, in a rebelli
against his father. Varames being soon aft
reduced to subjection, the Jews suffered extrem
A. D. ly for their rebellious proceedings, ar
615. were treated as a faithless, turbulent, ar
implacable people, that excited the su
jects against their prince, and fomented seditio
The Jews of Antioch were the first that suffere
the monarch's resentment; many of them p
rished by the sword; others were put to deat
by the most cruel torments; and the rest we
reduced to the most abject and deplorable s
very.

Chosroes, however, was afterwards reconcile
to them, and the Jews appear to have render
hi

nany signal and important services. In
the city of Jerusalem, they acted in con-
ith that prince; and no sooner was Chos-
naster of that metropolis, than he delivered
l the Christian prisoners into their hands;
h he must have known that the Jews pur-
d them for no other purpose, than to sa-
their cruel and implacable hatred against

Accordingly, no less than ninety thou-
of these unfortunate people were barba-
put to death.

ilst Chosroes also was besieging Constan-
e, and all the forces of Syria and Judea
employed in the defence of that capital, the
made an attempt upon Tyre. They in-
d to seize that important place, and to de-
all the Tyrians; but the inhabitants having
notice of their design, were prepared for
ack, and bravely repulsed them. Thus
pointed, the Jews dispersed themselves
gh the country, and assaulted and burned
of the Christian churches. They were,
ver, at length, destroyed by the Tyrians,
allying out of the city, cut them to pieces.
he seventh century, arose Mahomet on the
of the world. The splendid and princely
rance of this impostor deceived the Jews,
considered him as the true Messiah, and
of them became converts to the religion,
he professed and taught.* The Jews be-
merous and powerful in several parts of
a, possessed of many strong castles and
sses, and in the custom of maintaining ar-

*seems probable, that this conversion of the Jews, who
ways intent on worldly advantage, was more politi-
real.

mies

mies under their several princes, it is probable that Mahomet, at the commencement of his career, and before his religion had become established, thought it prudent and necessary to court their interest and alliance.

But whatever cause Mahomet might [illegible] for his aversion of this people, it is certain from the tenor of his writings, that he afterwards hated and despised them: he calls them betrayers and murderers of the prophets, and a people justly punished with the curse of the Almighty for their violations of his sabbaths and his law, and for their unbelief and contempt of the ancient seers and of himself. And at length, he openly declared hostilities against them.

This war was commenced by Cajab, one of the principal persons of the Jewish nation; a man who opposed all the measures of the impostor, for which reason Mahomet gave orders to several of his followers to waylay and to destroy him; whereupon Cajab, who was informed of the designs formed against him, appeared at the head of the Jews. Mahomet began his operations with besieging that people in Hegiasa; and having obliged them to surrender at discretion, he drove them into banishment, and distributed their wealth and effects among his disciples and followers. After this, Cajab attacked him near Kaibar, a place about four days' journey from Medina, where the Jews were totally routed, and

submit to the power of Mahomet, tributary. This yoke, however, was evous and oppressive to them; and an endeavoured to destroy the ty- n, but was detected. The Jews ienced the success and severity of applied to him the vision of Daniel's feet were partly iron and partly ice they inferred, that the Messiah ike his appearance, till that empire olished, since he is there prefigured it out without hands, which was to rminate it.

aquest of Persia by Omar the second, at succeeded Mahomet, the Jews onarchy became subject not only is, but to many others. This was y the quick succession of those d by the rapidity of their conquests We do not, however, find, that their eby became worse, excepting their in the common misfortunes, which ors failed not to bring into every they subdued. On the contrary, had subdued Isdegert, and made r of that prince's dominions, they s success; and under him and his ey enjoyed the full liberty of their

ne to relate the occurrences which in the west under the Roman em- g the sixth and seventh centuries. e of their complaint against Justi- tended to decide in all matters of the edict of that emperor, which em from celebrating the passover, according

according to their own calculation, and e
their observance of that feast, at the san
with the Christian church. This decr
soon after followed by another, which wa
more severe and oppressive, and which f
them to educate their children in the
faith. At the request of the council c
thage, Justinian also deprived those of
of the exercise of their religion, and comn
the prefect to convert their synagogu
churches.

These several edicts, which were con
by the Jews as severe and oppressive, fail
to irritate the minds of that people, and
duce a more than ordinary discontent.
dissatisfaction soon ripened into revolt.

A. D. 530. who pretended to be the Messia
the address to attract many of the
Palestine to his standard, whom h
of conqueror, and his splendid and mar
pearance, completely deceived. Julian
armed his followers, led them against the
tians, who dreading no hostilities at that tin
the oppressed Jews, and being therefore
unprepared for the attack, were slaught
great numbers. At length, however, t
peror sent troops to suppress them; a
leader of the Jews being taken, was imme
put to death, which terminated the revolt.

Sometime after, the Jews at Cæsarea r

A. D. against the Roman government, ar
joined by the Samaritans, for th
part their inveterate and mortal e
Having united their forces, they attack
destroyed many of the churches, and ma
great numbers of the Christians, and parti

ed to the emperor with all their aggrava-
, the property of the richer Jews was confis-
l, and many of those that were concerned in
evolt were beheaded or banished. They,
ever, joined with the Goths in Italy against
nian and his general Belisarius; and in con-
ion with the Gothic forces, they defended
city of Naples with such obstinacy and
ution, that the Roman soldiers became cru-
ely exasperated against them. When, there-
the city was taken, though Belisarius en-
oured to inspire his troops with sentiments
emency and pity, the Jews, without any dis-
on of age, sex, or rank, were cruelly put to
.

iis dreadful severity quelled them for a time,
during the two subsequent reigns, we read
ither revolt nor persecution. Under A. D.
as, however, the Jews at Antioch, 602.
e they were become very populous

suppressed and brought to condign
ment. By this time, notwithstanding the
of Adrian, they had become numerous
prus; and bishop Leontius, fearing the
fate of the island would be similar to t
Antioch, converted and baptised many
Jews.

Pope Gregory the great, who reigned
this time, exhorted his clergy and flock t
the Jews with candour and tenderness, b
as he himself believed and alleged, they
to be recalled, and to constitute a consid
part of the fold of Christ. Their con
however, became worse, after the emper
raclius had concluded a peace with the
A. D. monarch. It plainly appears fro
628. own words, that he hated the Jew
tion, on account of their rejectio
contempt of Christ and of his religion.
clius banished them from Jerusalem, to
they had once more gained access, and iss
edict prohibiting them from approaching
three miles of that city.

Heraclius having consulted the sooth
and diviners, relative to the fate of the e
received for answer, that a circumcised
would be its ruin. Considering, therefor
numerous and powerful the Jews were i
parts of his dominions, the great and fr
efforts which they had made to recove
liberty, and their cruel and sanguinary pr
ings against the Christians at different
and in diverse places, he doubted not bu
were the people intended and described
prediction. Not thinking it sufficient, ho
to persecute and destroy them in his own

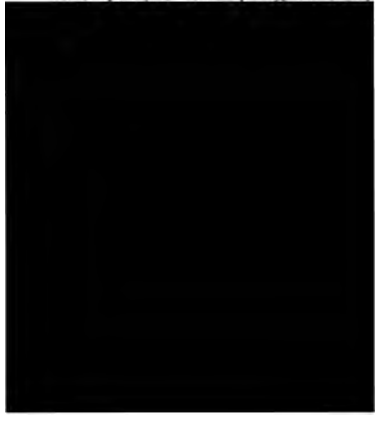
nions, he employed the whole of his power and authority in inflicting the same calamities on those of Gaul, Spain, and other kingdoms. Sizibut, the Spanish monarch in conformity to the request of the emperor, endeavoured to compel them to abjure Judaism and to be baptised in the Christian faith, or to abandon the kingdom. This zeal of the king, however, was not only discommended by Isidore, bishop of Seville, but was also reproved by the fourth council of Toledo, which declared, that he had engaged in a matter contrary to the nature of Christianity, and that it is God alone who hardeneth the hearts, and who sheweth mercy to whom he thinks proper. But in the next Toledan council, the laws enacted against the Jews were ratified; and it was moreover decreed, that no king should thenceforth ascend the throne, till he had solemnly sworn to observe them. In consequence of this edict, which was strictly enforced by the succeeding princes, many of the Jews were outwardly converted to the Christian faith. A. D. 633. A. D. 653.

No sooner were the Romans expelled Gaul, and the Visigoths completely suppressed, than several regulations and decrees were made by the councils relative to the Jewish people. Avitus, bishop of Auvergne, having converted several of that nation to Christianity, one of them entered the city of Clermont in his white garment; which being observed by a Jew, he threw a pot of stinking oil upon the new convert. This outrage irritated the Christians to such a degree, that had not the bishop interposed, the Jew would immediately have been put to death. The humanity of Avitus, however, only delayed

the effects of their resentment
A. D. 569. festival; the people de
gogue; and the Jews
embrace christianity,
the country.

During the minority of th
A. D. 655. Bathilda, the widow o
lished the capitation-t
its restraining people fr
obliging many to sell their c
might avoid paying the impos
had become odious and dete
in those children, whom th
rous nations, were obliged t
tives that they had in their pc
hibited that cruel and unnatu
the future.

A. D. 740. The eighth century
able for the conversion
then prince, to the rel
He had become dissatisfied w
his people and progenitors;



enlarged his dominions, by new and considerabl conquests.*

We shall now relate the principal occurrence which happened to the Jewish tribes dispersed in the east, during the eighth and ninth centuries. If we except the common calamities, which necessarily attended the civil wars that raged in those parts, and in which Jews and Christians participated, we do not, in general. find their tranquillity essentially disturbed. In particular, during the reigns of Abdelmelech, and of Alwalid and Solyman his brother, the Jewish academies flourished, and the Jews themselves enjoyed full liberty of conscience and all their ancient privileges. A. D. 705. In the reign of Almanzor, who succeeded Abulkabas, an edict, however, was issued against them by iman Jaaffar; by which those that were converted to Mahometanism, were declared heirs of the whole property of the family. A. D. 760. This decree induced great numbers of Jewish and other children to apostatize, that they might obtain estates, to which they were otherwise in no respect entitled.

Almanzor was succeeded by Al Mohdi, in whose reign Hakem, or Almakaneus, an impostor, whom some have supposed to have been a Jew, induced many disciples to follow him by means of miracles, which he pretended to perform. Mohdi sent a body of troops to reduce him, which besieged Hakem in one of his fortresses, where he first poisoned his followers,

* Notwithstanding the degree of credit which the Jews have endeavoured to attach to this pretended conversion of Bazar and of his subjects, the real existence of this Bazar and of his kingdom has always been much disputed

and then destroyed himself. In the
A. D. 831. Moman, appeared the famous Moosa, or Moses, the son of Am he called himself), who pretend that great lawgiver of the Jews, newly ri the dead.

Ali al Wathek became an enemy of t on account of the fraudulent practices they had been guilty, in the manageme finances, during the reign of his pre and because they objected to receive th as a true and authentic revelation. refusal, they were heavily taxed, and ol pay large sums into the treasury. Mot
A. D. 846. succeeded him, was still mor against them: he compelled wear leathern girdles by way o tion, commanded them to ride only on mules with iron stirrups, and deprived all their honours, titles, and offices. I not only extended through that empire, the neighbouring kingdoms; and the of infamy, in a greater or less degree, l sisted ever since, in those countries w subject to the Turks, and also in other Europe.

The Roman empire was at this time ably agitated by civil dissensions, betw iconaclasts and the worshippers of in which the Jews were particularly co The emperor Leo Isaurus commanded nichees and Jews to abjure their tenet become Christians. The patrons of however, notwithstanding the strenuo sition of the emperor, at length prevai the Jews, who had pretended obedienc

iedoc being at this time in possession of sigoths, was infested with frequent incur- of the Arabs, who are said to have been iance with the Jews, by whom they were d thither, and who engaged them to assist troying the Christians. They are, likewise, ed of requesting the aid of the Saracens, nancipate themselves from the tyranny oppression of the bishop of Toulouse, traversing Narbonne and Toulouse pene- as far as Lyons, and laid waste the coun- ith fire and sword. Charlemagne having ards completely defeated the Saracens, taken Toulouse, determined to put those to death that had favoured the invasion ccasioned so much bloodshed. He was, ver, prevailed on to commute their punish- and only the principal and most guilty as of that people suffered death. The rest nhabited the city, were condemned to re-

purchasing Christian slaves, and from obs
their sabbath; but he also interdicted the
tians from buying wine, and from carryi
any traffic with them, during the time of
The Jews having complained of these edi
immediately restored to their former privi
and Agobard could obtain no redress.

The condition of the Jews under Charl
Bald, was not in every respect so agreeab
easy. Remisius, the bishop of that diocese
ed some of his clergy to preach every Sa
in the synagogues; by which means m
their children were converted to christianit
to prevent the conversion of others, they
obliged to send them to Vienne in Dau
and to Macon and Arles in Provence,
they were more numerous. Remisius als
vailed on Charles to command the bis
Arles and others to pursue the same metho
consequence of which was, that great nu
of the Jewish children were voluntarily ba
and the prince, who thus favoured these c
sions, was poisoned by Sedecias, the Jewis
sician, whom we before mentioned. Th
are likewise accused of having encourag
incursion of the Normans, during this rei

The professors of Judaism in the east,
are to credit their historians, flourished
the tenth and eleventh centuries; and whi
rest of the world was overwhelmed in da
and ignorance, the literature and learn
the Jews not a little more conspicuous.
glory, however, was but of short duration.
internal disputes, and the zeal of the cru
against all of that nation occasioned the de
tion of their several academies, and the

pulsion of the Jews from the east, who bliged to take refuge in Spain, France, ier countries of Europe.

nation was at this time so numerous and ul, that they reckoned the Jews in the city utz-Shiboor to amount to nine hundred id. Certain it is, that they founded a new ty in that city, at the head of which was ebrated R. Sherira, under whom it flou- for thirty years. The Jews, in the reign em, suffered persecution for a short time pt. That prince endeavoured to found a ligion, opposite to all others, and which to have been that of the Drusi, and re- ith extravagant and impious tenets.* The of disciples that were converted to this nong the heathens, induced Hakem to te the Christians and Jews, who were the eople that opposed and contemned his e. The latter he obliged to wear a mark nction, and commanded their sy- ues to be shut; but soon after al- his intentions, he restored to them ncient liberty. A. D. 1026.

ng the wars that subsisted between the s and Christians in the tenth century, the cal schools in Spain were in a flourishing on, and the Jews in that country became ous and wealthy. The wars in Spain still ting during the eleventh century, R. Sa- evi, being secretary and prime minister to g of Granada, was by him created chief ewish nation, and used his utmost endea- to promote the honour and advantage of

* might probably be the religion of the Druids.

that

that people. But attempting to make c
to the Jewish religion, the king of Granac
A. D. 1046. ed the principal offender to be tal
hanged, and such a persecution
Jews immediately commenced, tl
hundred thousand families felt its dread
destructive effects.

The Jews, however, would have suf
more severe and fatal oppression under ki
dinand, who, at the instigation of his w
tended to consecrate the war against th
cens by the extirpation of that people, l
the bishops and pope Alexander the secoi
licly opposed and condemned the measur
what principally extricated them from t
secution of that monarch and of his su
was the revolution occasioned by the M
Africa. In consequence of this event, A
was extremely distressed, and found him
der the necessity of befriending and c
the Jews, that he might induce them to
him pecuniary and personal assistance
cordingly, he promoted them to great
crative offices, of which pope Gregory ex
disapproved. Peter, the grandson of A
followed the plan of his grandfather, dis

Hungary, the Jews flourished dur- A. D.
e latter part of the eleventh cen- 1092.
when St. Ladislaus, who then reign-
nvening a synod, several regulations were
d into, which imported, that if a Jew should
a Christian woman, or purchase a Chris-
ave, they should *ipso facto* be set at liberty,
eir price be confiscated to the bishop. Co-
, his son and successor, forbade the Jews to
use of Christian slaves; but he permitted
o buy and cultivate lands within the ju-
ion of a bishop; and these laws sufficiently
strate, that they were then numerous and
ful in that kingdom.

number and power of the Jews had also
e great in Germany and Bohemia, where
ad erected many stately and superb syna-
s. They suffered, indeed, grievous perse-
s, in several parts of those kingdoms, from
alots of other persuasions. But what
contributed to excite the fury and resent-
of others against them, was the march of
saders through several cities of Germany,
aughtered and destroyed all the Jews that
d to become Christians. The Jewish his-
s relate, that five thousand of their people
illed or drowned; but the number of those
ved themselves, by pretending a conver-
as much more considerable. The Chris-
riters, however, compute the amount of
mer to have been infinitely greater, and
at the manner of their death was more
ul and terrifying. Those who pretended
ome Christians, soon relapsed into Ju-
. The bishop of Spires, more humane and
ul than many others, not only protected
the

A. D. 1144. The next crusade, which com fifty years after, might have pr less violent against them, had Jews been sufficiently forewarned by the and infatuated zeal of the hermit Ro who inculcated with great earnestness lemnity the propriety and necessity of t sure, and proclaimed the holy war a banks of the Rhine. The Jews being retired to Nuremberg, and to other which the emperor kindly received and ed them. The persecution, however, through most countries of Europe, a numbers of them fell a sacrifice to the and ambition of priests and princes.

St. Bernard, who was no less an enem Albigenses, than he was a friend to the . clined pope Innocent the second to favo His successor, Alexander the third, bec a great patron and protector of them,

of their demeanour. At length, however, ung Jewess died; and Joseph was expelled ice by the treachery and intrigues of Gon- one of his own creatures. Under pretence ing the monarch's coffers, Gonzales pre- on Alphonso to grant him eight of the pal Jews. These he caused to be put to , and their estates to be confiscated. He offered a much larger sum for allowing him y more; but Alphonso thought it more irable to confiscate their estates, for de- g the future expences of the war, than to heir lives and property also; in consequence ich that people voluntarily poured immense into the treasury.

France, the Jews were accused of the mur- f St. William, and many of them were con- ed to the flames. The odium, which this lical act brought upon the rest, exposed to the insults of the populace. At length,

castle on the river Seine, and having scourg
and crowned a youth with thorns, they cruci
him. This usage obliged the king to g
ther in person, and to cause eighty of them t
burned alive.

Though the Jews had been banished England
er since 1020, they had nevertheless found
means to resettle in that kingdom and
A. D. 1179. were become so numerous in the reign o
Henry the second, that possessing only
one burying ground in the city of London, they
petitioned that king to allow them some new ce
meteries, which were readily granted them. But
they underwent a most dreadful punishment in
the reign of Richard the first, his successor: for
having ventured, contrary to express prohibi-
tions, to assist at the coronation of that king
they were discovered, and being attacked by th
people were dragged out of the church half-dead
The populace were so exasperated, that the
broke into the houses of the Jews, and put
death all they could find. But the disorder d
not terminate in London. Though the gove
ment, on the day succeeding that of the coro
tion, published a proclamation, which was
pected to suppress and allay the fury and res
ment of the people, the persecution contin
several months. A. D. 1190.

The number and power of the eastern
were by this time so much decreased, tha
find very little mention made of them. N
Ledinillah, caliph of Bagdad, a zealous M
metan, and very avaricious, grew jealous
great wealth of the Jews, and of the rea
and joy with which they received every pr
ed Messiah, raised a persecution against

l compelled them all to become Mahometans, to leave the Babylonian territories. Some refore departed, and the rest were converted Mahometanism. The wars that succeeded ıded to complete their ruin in that country.

Notwithstanding the hostilities which subsist- between the Christians and Saracens, the ws in Judea had their synagogues and learned bbins; but the invasion of Egypt by St. Louis, d the revolution which happened soon after, ıder the Mamelûks, prevented the Jews in that ngdom from becoming numerous, wealthy, or arned.

The Jews in the neighbourhood of Babylon, ıd the dispersion of the ten tribes in the east, ıd suffered considerably from the invasion of e Tartars; but, at length, they obtained a re- ite under Jehan Argun, by means of a Jewish ysician, whom that prince raised to be his ime minister. After the death of Argun, the ewish prime minister, being hated by the Ma- ometans and Arabs for his kindness and affinity) those of his own sect, was accused of aving poisoned that prince, and on this ccusation was condemned and put to eath. A great number of his nation also suf- ered with him. It is probable, however, that he Jews, in the Grecian empire, during the hirteenth and fourteenth centuries, enjoyed reat tranquillity. A. D. 1291.

In the west, the Jews were no less hated and ppressed, than they were numerous and weal- hy. Their riches, indeed, served to excite the ealousy of their adversaries, and to procure to hemselves tyranny and oppression. In Spain,

ishop of Toledo perceiving them to
ase in number and wealth, excited
populace against them; and making
ir leader, entered and plundered their
d synagogues. The crusaders, who
preparing for an expedition into the
id, and having imbibed the cruel and
e idea, that the destruction of those ene-
Christ and of his gospel would infallibly
he favour and blessing of heaven on their
ze, completed what the bigotted bishop
gun. They made such havoc and car-
mong this unhappy and unfortunate peo-
at this is reckoned as one of the four most
: and bloody persecutions which the Jews
suffered. The Spanish nobles endeavoured
terpose their authority, and to suppress th
lties practised on them; but Ferdinand, t
nish monarch, who wished to ingratiate hi
with the zealots, by the persecution of
bigenses and other heretics, encouraged
omoted the persecution.

Alphonso the tenth, king of Castile, a
rated astronomer, being assisted by some
ins in compiling certain astronomical t
became so generous a friend and patron
Jews, that the jealousy of the zealots w
cited, and they formed plots and accu
against them. Three villains of the city
sana, in Andalusia, threw the dead bo
man into the house of a Jew, and accu
of the murder. By means of this im
assertion, the popular ferment and ha
roused; a great number of the Jews w
inanly put to death; and others fled

disputes on their part; and the ag-
the aggrieved accused each other,
their cause before the Spanish mo-
then the Jewish nation was acquitted of
ded murder.

the first, king of Arragon, a pious and
monarch, was so far from abet-
adopting the persecutions, which A. D. 1264.
prevalent, that he requested the
of the Jews, from whom he derived
ral and theological instruction. Though
h people were hated, despised, and de-
the populace, and by the ignorant
e clergy, they were nevertheless pro-
mired, and encouraged by the great
rned. This happiness, however, was
and dispelled by the accidents and mis-
which soon after befel them. A per-
d Zachariah, pretended that, by his
e of the scriptures and of the prophets,

and at the time appointed entered the sy
gogues clothed in white. But finding this te
only an imposture, they became ashamed of t
conduct, and were exposed to the mocks and
sults of their enemies.

But the most dreadful and deplorable of
A. D. 1320. the disasters which happened to Jews at this period, was occasioned the irruption of a body of enthusi
shepherds, who pretended to work miracles, having become numerous and powerful, car
fire and sword into several provinces. Jews, in particular, suffered the cruelty and
pression of those enthusiasts wherever they w
happy were they that could, at the expence of
religion and property, preserve their lives;
they who refused to give up either, were insu
ly and inhumanly put to death. The pestil
that arose in the army of the shepherds, which extended through the neighbouring c
try, was also productive of evils to the Je
nation: they were accused of having bribe
peasants of Mesura to poison the river, ar
having furnished them with the poison for
purpose; and on the grounds of this false
wicked allegation, a great number of them
imprisoned and tried. After a long confiner
they acquitted themselves of the crimes imp
to their charge; but the king, who did not
to confess the injustice of which he had
guilty towards them, pretended that he had
them in prison for the purpose of conve
them to Christianity. The Jews, therefor
fusing to be baptised in the Christian faith,
burned alive, to the number of fifteen thous

Alphonso the eleventh, the friend and p

boy of that nation. It was deliberat-
cil whether they should be put to death
d, and, the latter measure being pre-
y were commanded to depart A. D.
m in three months. The prince 1333.
ever, obtained a revisal of the
nd it was then found, that the sup-
ne had inadvertently been committed
g Christian. On this deposition, the
led his edict; but the acquittal of the
ot prevent the fury and resentment of
against them, in another town, where
hat nation were put to death for the
offence.

ter, an insurrection broke out against
oledo, in which the Jews behaved in
perate manner, as can scarcely be con-
One of them perceiving the zealots
nto the house, with intent to massacre
und, was seized with fury and despair,
r one that had taken refuge with him

celona, where some were plundered and other murdered; and the more artful and crafty among the Hebrews changed their religion, that they might escape such acts of violence. The great and populous synagogues of Seville and Cordova became almost wholly deserted; and the young king still pursued these unhappy fugitives with hatred and resentment. The inhabitants of Andalusia, and of other provinces, seized and put to death all that retired thither. His son John, who succeeded him, was no less embittered against them; insomuch that the Jews in his reign were deprived of the necessaries of life, and obliged to wear a red mark of distinction; and those who had hitherto concealed and preserved themselves were punished with death.

The Jews of Arragon were not much better treated than those of Castile. That kingdom was distracted with civil and intestine war which could only be supported by large imposts and the Jews were taxed very heavily, and exposed to continual vexations and persecutions which reduced them to the lowest ebb of misery.

It was noticed before, that the Jews in the twelfth century were banished and recalled by Philip, king of France. They were no sooner resettled in the dominions of this prince, than they resumed their accustomed usury and extortions. By this means they became powerful, and accumulated wealth; they purchased lands and estates, and grew insolent and tyrannical; and the government was under the necessity of framing new laws, to suppress the abuses, and punish the enormities, which they were daily guilty. St. Louis, however, not finding those edicts sufficient to pre-

A. D. 1218.

vent the evils, which they were intended to remedy, commanded all his subjects to refrain from borrowing money of the Jews. Being numerous and great usurers also in Britanny, the nobility and merchants united in a complaint to the duke; and a law was passed, which declared, that at the request of the bishops, abbots, barons, and vassals in Britanny, all the Jews should for ever be banished from that province.

The celebrated council of Lyons, which excommunicated the emperor, passed a decree, also enjoining all Christian princes, who had Jews in their dominions, to compel them to refund to the crusaders all the money which they had obtained by usury. The Jews were also prohibited from demanding any debts due to them from the crusaders, till their death or return, while the council of Vienne defended the Christians against the vexatious suits and extortions of that nation. The Jewish people, however, notwithstanding these decrees and precautions, in some provinces of France were raised to the magistracy, and, in most parts of that kingdom, kept Christian slaves. A. D. 1240.

A signal calamity befel them, about this time, in the persecution raised against them by the Parisians, on account, as was pretended, of sacrificing some Christian children on Good-Friday, and of using their blood at the solemnity of the passover; for which imputed act of murder and impiety, the Jews were cruelly slaughtered in Paris. The persecution was also extended into the provinces of Brie, Touraine, Anjou, Poitou, and Maine, in which more than two thousand five hundred of these unfortunate and oppressed people, who refused A. D. 1236.

to

to become Christians, were put to death, by the most cruel torments. The sufferings of the Jewish nation in France would not probably have terminated here, had not the Pope interposed, and requested St. Louis, the reigning monarch, to allow them liberty of conscience. Whilst, however, the French king was under confinement in the Holy Land, he gave orders that they should be expelled his dominions, which was punctually executed by the queen regent.

A. D. 1275. They were recalled in the next reign by Philip the Bold, a prince of a generous and humane disposition, who was induced to this measure by their known and acknowledged usefulness, in the promotion of commerce and the circulation of money, which could not fail of improving the finances, at that time greatly exhausted. Under the reign of this monarch the Jews became powerful and wealthy. They were expelled Gascony by Edward the first king of England, who having engaged in the holy war, had also imbibed the strange and unnatural idea, that the persecution of those enemies of Christ and of his gospel, would be the most effectual means of obtaining a blessing on his enterprize.

The example of Edward was followed soon after by Philip the Fair, who expelled them the

A. D. 1300. French dominions. It is generally allowed, that Philip was induced to take this measure in order to enrich himself by plunder; and that the Jewish nation was sacrificed to his extreme avarice. Their wealth and effects were seized by the monarch, and many died through want in exile. They were, how-

ever

ever, recalled eight years after, by his successor Louis, in order to replenish the empty treasury, to recruit the finances, and to make trade and commerce to flourish. They were afterwards accused of having suffered themselves to be bribed, by the king of Granada, to procure the poisoning of all the rivers, wells, and reservoirs of water; which were accordingly found poisoned in France and Germany. A leper having deposed, that he was hired by a certain rich Jew to effect this purpose, the Jewish people in Languedoc were immediately put to death, in the most cruel and barbarous manner; those of Paris were treated with more equity and moderation, and only the guilty suffered. Others were banished; and the rich were imprisoned, till they had discovered their treasures and effects.

Charles, whilst dauphin of Viennois, and duke of Normandy, was under the necessity of recalling them during his father's imprisonment, and the existing disorders of the state. On his accession to the throne, he granted and confirmed their ancient privileges, and only compelled them to wear some mark of distinction; but afterwards becoming deranged in his intellects, the Jews were again accused of committing murders and outrages, for which some of them were hanged, others scourged, and fines were levied on the synagogues. These severities induced many to assume the mask of christianity. At length appeared that memorable edict, which for ever expelled the Jewish nation from the French dominions. In this, however, we ought to except the city of Metz in Lorrain, in which they preserved their civil and religious rights; and which were afterwards confirmed A. D. 1356.

confirmed to them by Louis the thirteenth.—A. D. 1617.

In Italy, the popes were favourable and kind to the Jews. Gregory the ninth, who at this time filled the papal throne, imitated the example of his predecessors; and though he was a zealous promoter of the holy war, yet observing that the crusaders commenced their pious work with the massacre and destruction of the Jews, he took every method to prevent such barbarity. In Naples, the Jewish people were become numerous and wealthy; and many of them were converted to christianity, and were permitted to marry the daughters of the richest and noblest families in the kingdom. The fury of the zealots, however, was raised against them, and a massacre of the Jews immediately followed. The riot and persecution extended through great parts of the kingdom; and those in the city of Naples would also have been put to death had not the nobility interposed, and concealed the most wealthy, and therefore the most obnoxious, in their houses; and by those means preserved them from the rage and resentment of the populace. They were no less numerous and powerful at Bologna, where they built many stately edifices and the most magnificent synagogue in Italy.

We meet with nothing worthy of notice relative to the Jews in England, till the reign of king John, except that they were invited into this kingdom by William the Conqueror. During the time of king John the country was distracted with civil and intestine broils, and he was under the necessity of supporting his government by the most oppressive exactions, the heavie which fell on the Jews. At length the

ve without labour or usury. This
of them to become Christians, and
are told, continued a considerable

f Norwich were accused of having
ian child, and of having kept him
ıey might circumcise and crucify
suing passover; but being detected,
that period, they suffered a severe
ɔus punishment. In London the
: accused of some murders and of
nces, and after enduring various
l sufferings, they were obliged to
of all their wealth. The holy war,
ry was pressingly invited by
; another pretence for de-
ıey from his subjects, and
n the Jews, whom he scrupled not
what they had left. Their contri-
ılso demanded for carrying on the
The wealth of the Jews however

A. D.
1252.

fund it, had he not been convinced of thei
poverty and distress.

It is agreed by most writers, that the
A. D. were expelled England, by a per
1291. edict about this time; and King Ed
who banished them, gave them n
with which to transport themselves into Fr

Whether the Jews really committed g
and more numerous offences in Germar
the people were more superstitiously z
against them, than in other countries, th
scarcely a kingdom in which they have
accused of more enormous crimes. At Fi
fort, on account of some conversions, the
nation and fury of the Jews and zealots b
dreadful; and arms were seized on both
Several Christians lost their lives, and abo
hundred and eighty Jews were burned
One-half of the city was consumed by fire
all the Jews were in danger of falling a sa
to the resentment of the populace. At M
in Bavaria, an old woman having confesse
she sold a child to the Jews, whom they cru
the people without waiting the event of a
put all the Jews to death that they could
The officers of the town having, in vain, at
ed to suppress the tumult, advised the J
retire into their synagogue, which was a
building made of stone. This advice the
lowed; but, notwithstanding the great
of the duke and of the officers to appeas
disperse the multitude, they were all burne
destroyed in it. An accusation of a simil
ture was urged against the Jews of
burgh and Bern, where they were put
in the same manner.

red themselves entitled, had their
n christian. It was also enacted,
s should be compelled to demolish
stately synagogues which they had
to be satisfied with their ancient
ship. These decrees, however, were
rtive, so long as the princes and
cly protected those that refused to
The clergy, therefore, were under
of pursuing more violent measures,
nunicated all that protected and de-
legraded people.

he contest between Adolphus of
Albert of Austria, each of
een elected emperor, a pea-
ame of Raind Fleish, com-
eacher in the high Palatinate, Fran-
her provinces, and pretended that
t him to exterminate and destroy all
Vithout further enquiry, the people

A. D. 1264.

sent of God, should induce the [illegible]
and join his competitor.

The council convened at Vienna by p
ment, condemned the usury of the Jews,
creed that those who favoured and app
them should be considered as heretics,
edict was the cause of much mischief a
ation to the Jews, especially in Germany
were, however, in some measure, reli
A. D 1339. Menicho, bishop of Spires, who
them to be molested on that acc
his dominions; and alleged that,
were without the pale of the church, t
could not concern them. A few year
they were banished by Lewis the first,
Hungary, out of his dominions. A Jew
Cicogne, whose family was numerous at
fort, threw some pieces of fire into th
house, which consumed both it and all the
therein. The flame also spread to th
dral, which was reduced to ashes. Th
did not remain unpunished, for not onl
cendiary, but all the Jews in Franckfor
that retired into Bohemia only excepte
put to death.

The Jews having escaped the comm
tality, which happened in most parts of
were accused of having poisoned the
wells, and reservoirs of water. This oc
another massacre and destruction in seve
vinces of Germany, in which some were
alive, and others most cruelly slaughtered
of Mentz, however, resolved to defen
selves; and having seized about two
unarmed Christians, put them to dea

ews were demolished, and castles
t with the materials. The reign-
ıtine and his ministers, endea-
to suppress the violence, and to
; they were opposed by some of
d by the populace, who accused
ıg bribes to defend them. All
abitants of Ulm, together with
ınd effects, were burned; and in
ole Hebrew nation in those parts
ıe without friends and retreat;
ed, at so critical a period, to in-
ehalf.

es in Bohemia were not much
ıan their brethren in Ger-
s, the emperor, and king
irous of ingratiating him-
ubjects, discharged his nobility
which they owed to the Jews.
refore, considering them as dis-

A. D 1391.

springs, which have a free and unrestrain
course, cannot be contaminated by poison. T
preserve them from a more cruel and dreadf
A. D. 1400. fate, the emperor was under the necessi
of issuing an edict, enjoining them to d
part the country, or to be baptized. Fe
however, if any, were induced to apostatize,
as they expressed it, to forsake the glory of th
God.

Benedict the thirteenth, who was then in A
ragon, endeavoured to ingratiate himself wi
the Spanish nation, by his zeal for the conv
sion of the Jews. Conferences were according
held on the subject; and after some time spe
in this manner, many professed to be discip
and followers of Christ. But whatever might
the number of these Jewish converts, their s
cerity was much disputed, and not indeed wi
out sufficient reason; for it appears that th
yielded only to necessity, and merely to avo
harsh and cruel treatment. In outward appe
ance, they professed Christianity, but they c
cumcised their children, observed the passov
and neglected none of the Jewish rites and ce
monies.

This dissimulation did not escape the not
of the clergy, nor remain long unpunished; th
acquainted the Spanish monarch and the pu
with the conduct of the converted Jews; ag
which, the tribunal of inquisition was or
manded to observe the behaviour of those de
quents more narrowly, and all Christian prin
were exhorted to assist in bringing them to c
dign punishment. This decree, which was p
claimed in most parts of Spain, had a spee
and powerful effect; and seventeen thous
Je

Jews immediately returned to the church, and submitted themselves to whatever censures or penance should be inflicted. Two thousand of this oppressed and unfortunate people were burned alive, notwithstanding their acknowledgment and confession, that Jesus was the true Messiah. Many were imprisoned, and languished long in confinement; and after regaining their liberty, were compelled to wear a badge of distinction and disgrace. Nor did they spare the sacred repositories of the dead: human bodies were disinterred and burned; their estates and property confiscated; and their children declared incapable of succeeding to the possessions of their parents. These severities obliged many to emigrate into other countries; and others embraced Christianity. But notwithstanding these conversions, the populace insulted and oppressed them, and attributed every calamity or misfortune that befel them to the obstinacy of the recusants, or to the dissimulation and hypocrisy of the conformists.

A severe and dreadful edict was afterwards issued against the Jews by Ferdinand king of Spain, by which the whole Jewish nation was commanded to leave that monarch's dominions in the space of four months; and the people were prohibited, under the greatest penalties, from affording victuals, or any other assistance, to such as should be found in the kingdom, after that period. Historians inform us, that seventy thousand families, or eight hundred thousand persons, quitted Spain pursuant to this decree: but the Jewish writers make the refugees amount to a much greater number. A. D. 1492.

coasts, and were exposed to an instant or
ing death; the plague destroyed great nu
and to complete the series of their cal
those who reached the city of Fez in
were refused admittance by the cruel ar
ciless inhabitants, and perished for want
tenance. Whether Ferdinand was indu
adopt this severe and tyrannical measure
tives of avarice and the prospect of ob
immense riches, or was influenced by ca
a pious and religious nature, we forbea
vestigate. Certain, however, it is, that
duct in this respect was highly censured
sober and judicious Christians; and thou
Alexander the sixth dignified the monar
the surname of Catholic, for this zealous
secuting action, he nevertheless receive
of the fugitives into his dominions.

John the second, king of Portugal,
not naturally a friend and benefactor of th

pretences. This conduct of the king drove the Jews to despair, and many of them put an end to their existence. Those who departed the kingdom endured the most severe hardships and insults; and of those who became Christians, great numbers were ill treated and massacred, for the slightest and most trivial offences.

Notwithstanding the cruelties and severities which the Jews had suffered in Spain, they were no sooner informed that Charles the fifth had ascended the throne, than they endeavoured to procure a resettlement in that kingdom. For this purpose, they commissioned some of the most considerable of their nation to represent to the Spanish monarch, that they suffered under the servitude of a religion which they were compelled to embrace, and to whose rigorous and unremitted persecutions they were daily exposed; that they carried on the whole commerce of the nation, and were the most useful, and perhaps the most faithful, subjects in the kingdom; and therefore requested, that he would be pleased to allow them the free and unrestrained exercise of their religion, for which act of condescension and kindness, they engaged to present the king with eight hundred thousand crowns of gold. The Spanish monarch received them very graciously, and the council of Flanders was likewise of opinion, that their request should be granted, and their offer accepted. Cardinal Ximenes, however, dissuaded Charles from this resolution, and this last effort of the Jews was unsuccessful.

We shall now give an account of the eastern Jews during the fifteenth, sixteenth, and seventeenth centuries:

In

In Media, where Ishmael Sophi, chief o family of the Persian kings, commenced his quests, they were astonished at his rapid wonderful success, and began to consider hi the true Messiah. In this opinion they moreover confirmed, by his declaring him A. D. 1500. prophet sent by God, to inspect an form the Mahometan religion. prince, however, despised the Jew fused their homage and service, and treated with greater severity than any of his sub In the reign of Abbas the second, a great c A. D. 1666. cil was convened, in which it was u mously resolved, that the Jewish n should be destroyed without delay. cordingly an order was issued to Persian strangers to massacre all the Jews, withou gard to sex, age, or condition, those onl cepted who should be converted to the rel of Mahomet. The persecution commenc Ispahan, the capital of the kingdom, exte with equal severity to the several provinc habited by Jews, and continued for three without intermission. A few of them fled the dominions of Turkey, and others into I and many preserved their lives by abj their religion. Those of Ispahan, were, ever, very poor, and not numerous. They obliged to pay an annual sum of money t king, and to wear a garment for the sake o tinction.

Bagdad, once the residence of the princ the captivity, was much reduced since i taken by Amurat the fourth; but had a number of Jewish inhabitants, who, though enjoyed the free and unrestrained exerci

igion, were nevertheless hated and des-
y the Persians. In Armenia they are
have lived peaceably; but a Christian
urdered by a Jew, many of the Jewish
were crucified, and others burned. In
luring the fifteenth, sixteenth, and seven-
enturies, they were numerous, and had
nsplanted thither by Sennacherib. They
to have had one hundred persons for
orty Christians that inhabited Media.
pread themselves as far as the foot of
Caucasus; and we are told, that the
of Mingrelia and Imiretta pretended to
endants of king David. The ancient
hs of Georgia boasted the same extrac-
nd the cham of that country, among
les, called himself a descendant of Solo-
e Jewish king. In these parts is a great
of Judaism. This was the general state
Jews in Persia, Media, Armenia, and
her provinces in the east, during those
s now under review.

ould naturally be expected, that Judea,
ncient and beloved country, would have
ed a greater number of Jews than either
r Egypt. It was, indeed, frequently vi-
y devotees, who made a pilgrimage to
m; but very few fixed their abodes in
untry. Sephet, or Tzepheth, a city of
, was the most populous and celebrated,
he Jews possessed in this province. This
njoyed several advantages greater than
; and the Jews that inhabited it were
with more kindness, than those that lived
other part of the Ottoman empire. To
y they sent their children to be instructed

in

much credit and safety.

The Jews in Syria were much more num and flourishing than in Judea. They alway their synagogues and learned men at Dama They also obtained from the Christians a brated plat of ground, where, it is prete that Elijah the prophet called Elisha to b servant, and in which place they erected a s tuous synagogue. At Aleppo the Jews we less numerous; and in this city Zabathai was born, who proclaimed himself the Me and the deliverer of Israel, and that he was to subvert and destroy the Ottoman p Many were induced to credit his assertion account of an interpretation of a passag Daniel, that the Messiah should appear the year 1675. The more prudent, howev that nation became sensible, that this inte insurrection would occasion the ruin of a Jews in the Ottoman empire, and therefore nounced him an impostor, and condemne

orders to his vizier to cause him to be ap-
nded and bastinadoed, which were accord-
executed.
ter suffering this punishment, Tzevi was
soned in the Dardanels, from whence he
mbassadors to assure the Jews, that he was
ue Messiah, and to inform them of the mi-
; which he had already performed, or still
o perform. Being afterwards detected and
d to be an impostor, he was commanded by
ltan to be carried to Adrianople, and put
ath. To avoid this punishment, Tzevi and
ife apostatized from the Jewish faith, and
converted to Mahometanism. He was,
ver, afterwards beheaded by order of the
d Seignior.
ter the death of this impostor, Daniel Is-
a Jew, who had dwelt at Smyrna six or
years, undertook to persuade the Jewish
e, that Tzevi was yet alive and concealed,
that he would re-appear, according to the

Daniel Israel.

In Ethiopia, during the fifteenth, and seventeenth centuries, the Jews lived ably, and easily maintained themselves conformity that subsisted between their and customs and those of the Ethiopian boast that they are of the same lineage. Jewish people in this part never receiv Talmud, nor any of those traditions by their religion is injured. It is no easy determine in what period the Jews settled in Ethiopia. A late traveller, us, that Saba, who founded the metro Abyssinia, was a Jewess, and that her became Jews before the time of Solomo also tells us, that they continued Jews fr time of the building of the temple, to 622 after Christ, when they were conv Mahometanism.* The Jewish people, in of which we are treating, are said to habited a high and spacious mountain, ac only on one side, which was rocky, differ dangerous. Claude, the son of David, refuge on this mountain from th A. D. of his brother, and was received wit 1540. kindness by the Jews, who defend with such bravery and fidelity, that th afterwards enjoyed his friendship and pro

They maintained themselves in the s dependent manner at the commencemen seventeenth century, possessed nearly thi vinces, and were considered as the ancie

* Vide Mr. Bruce's Travels, vol. i. p. 478, 4

nts of Abyssinia, and known by the name *Bephereds.** Socinios, a bold and successful ce, attacked them with a powerful army, odged them from their rocks and fastnesses, dispersed them throughout the kingdom.

chmed, governor of Egypt, having revolted inst Soliman the second, imposed a of two hundred talents on the Jews hat kingdom. They, however, plead- nsolvency, and paid only fifteen talents into treasury. Upon which, Achmed command- hem to be arrested and imprisoned. This er, however, was annulled, by the seizure and th of Achmed himself; and the Jews cele- ted a feast in memory of their deliverance. ro was full of Jews, most of whom e rich merchants. The liberty, how- r, which was granted to the Jewish ion, induced them to disperse over that coun- where they exercised a variety of occupa- s, and carried on some considerable manu- ures. It is said, that the Jews were more nerous in those parts during this period, than the whole of their nation in the time of ses. A. D. 1524. A. D. 1673.

Muley Archey, king of Taphilet, having seized property of a rich Jew, was thereby enabled make himself master of the province of Qui- na, and to disposses his brother of the king- m of Morocco and Fez. To recompence the brews for this act of oppression to an indivi- l, he allowed them their former privileges, l created Josuah Ben Hamosheth prince of e nation. His brother Ishmael, who succeed-

* Vide Mr. Bruce's Travels, vol. ii. p. 299.

ed him in the kingdom, was [illegible]
and benefactor of the Jewish people,
made one of them his envoy to the c
courts of Europe, who concluded the pea
the United Provinces, A. D. 1664.

The Jews had been a long time set
Oran, and were intrusted with some of t
lucrative and considerable offices in t
Their fidelity and affection to the Sp
however, were such, notwithstanding th
ment they had received from them, that t
A. D. 1669. trayed the town to the Spanish a
but this service, and many other
they performed, did not preven
from suffering banishment. In the pro
Suz also, they were numerous and flou
in the capital of that principality they ha
and stately synagogue, which was serve
veral priests and officers. They had thei
and interpreters of the law, who were m
ed at the charge of the people. In the k
of Fez, their synagogues having been de
A. D. 1660. ed, Muley Mahomet not only caus
to be rebuilt, but appointed a J
treasurer and prime minister.

Though we have hitherto seen the J
voured and protected by the popes in Ita
A. D. 1412. warlike pontiff, John the twent
raised a dreadful and destructive p
tion against them. Not satisfie
ever, with oppressing them in his own
nions, he wrote to the queen-regent of
during the minority of her son John, and
her to act in the same manner. To this
she immediately acceded, and sixteen th
of the Jewish nation were compelled to

the inquisitors. He also sent letters into
, to prevent those in that kingdom from
; compelled to abjure their religion.
ey had not long enjoyed pope Nicholas's
nage and protection, before another perse-
n was raised against them. In the bishopric
ent, and in all the cities of Venice, the po-
e were so much excited against them, that
plundered and massacred all whom they
l; and the doge and senate were under the
sity of interposing their authority, to sup-
the riot and slaughter. The Jews, how-
were afterwards expelled Trent.
pe Alexander the sixth not only received
Jews whom the kings of Spain and Portu-
ad banished, but enjoined their brethren at
e, who had treated them with great neglect,
ve them every assistance in their power for
lishing themselves in his dominions. He
ed them the same privileges as the Jews
ormerly enjoyed; and endeavoured to pro-

vere edicts against them; but pope Pi
A. D. 1569. behaved with still greater sev
not only restricted them in the
worship, but charged them w
crimes and misdemeanors, for which
expelled all places of his dominions,
the cities of Rome and Ancona.
fifth acted with greater openness an
and declared that the profit and
which he received from the Jewish
were the principal motives for his tole
people. This pope revoked all the
edicts, which his predecessors had iss
them; but Clement the eighth con
bull of pope Pius the fifth against the
were thereby expelled the ecclesiastic

During the fifteenth, sixteenth, and
centuries, the Jews in Germany an
northern countries were extremely
but much poorer, and worse treated by
and populace, than those of Italy.
bers had settled at Thuringa and
which places the landgraves exact
vast sums of money for the peace
which they enjoyed. Lewis the ten
A. D. 1454. Bavaria, banished them out o
nions, without regarding his o
or the remonstrances of their
confiscated all their effects, and er
edifices in the places where they hu

have been their wealth and effects. The bishop of Cologne soon after followed the example of the citizens of Nuremberg, and expelled them his diocese.

The Jews of Mersburgh, who pretended to have been settled there ever since the destruction of Jesusalem, were banished from that city and diocese by the bishop. The emperor Ferdinand the first, however, received and protected them. Ever since the tenth century, the Jews, on account of the services which they had rendered the Christians against the banditti, had lived peaceably and happily in Bohemia; but a conflagration having destroyed some part of that kingdom, they were accused, and found guilty of being accessaries to it. Those, therefore, that escaped death, were expelled the kingdom, but were afterwards recalled. A. D. 1559.

The Jews in Hungary were greatly decreased in number, towards the conclusion of the sixteenth century; and that the emperor might compel them to leave his dominions with greater celerity, he imposed on them a double tax, which it was supposed they could scarcely be able to pay. A great persecution was raised against this people in Moravia; and many were burned and put to death, before any assistance could be rendered them. Those in Franconia being accused of setting fire to several houses in the town of Bamberg, were plundered of their effects. In Vienna the Jews had obtained such credit, that they were permitted to erect a stately and sumptuous synagogue; but the building was scarcely finished, when the emperor expelled them from that capital, and converted A. D. 1660.

their synagogue into a church. Af
of the empress, however, they w
and admitted to several posts and
nour. They were also numerous an
in most of the other cities of that
in the provinces of Servia, Croati
and Valantina. In Holland, they en
liberty and quietness, and were mor
and wealthy than in any other part

We have now brought the history
and western Jews to the close of th
century. It remains only, theref
give a short account of the prese
condition of this people.

Of the ten tribes carried into
Shalmanezer, and of the country
settled, we have received no certain
tic information, unless we are to
they still exist in Persia, under the
of Afghans, who, according to the
tions, are descendants of the Jews
from the book of Esdras, that t
after a wandering journey, arrived
called Arsareth; where, with grea
we may suppose that they settle
most accurate historians of Persia
the Afghans are descended from the
in some measure, corroborates and
dible their traditions of the same i
also asserted, that their families a
guished by the names of Jewish t
since their conversion to the faith
they have been extremely studiou
ing their origin and descent. 'I
they use, is said to have a manifes
to the chaldaic; and a considera

the country which they inhabit, is called Hazareth, or Hazaret, which might easily have been changed into Arsareth.*

The Turkish empire, however, is the principal retreat of the Jews. At Constantinople and Salonichi they are more numerous than in any other part. In Fez, Morocco, and other African states are great numbers of Jews; and in the interior parts of that continent, they have so far conformed to the religion of Mahomet, as to recite in public, prayers from the Koran. They are dispersed over Germany; but are more numerous in Poland, Lithuania, and Russia. In protestant countries they are treated with great mildness and charity; and in England, they are wisely allowed the full liberty of their religion, an unrestrained freedom of commerce, and the quiet and peaceable enjoyment of their property, though a liberal attempt made to naturalize them about half a century ago, failed from popular ignorance and intolerance.

CHAP. I.

Of Africa in General.

AT what time this vast continent was first distinguished by the title of a distinct, or third, part of the world, it would be no easy matter to determine. Strabo, who was only acquainted with those kingdoms of Africa which the Romans reduced under their power, thought

* Vide Asiatic Researches, vol. ii. p. 76.

it

it too inconsiderable to deserve that distin
and though Ptolemy was better informe
respect to the continent of Africa, and m
his account of its geography and natural h
has been lately confirmed by indisputabl
dence, he was nevertheless in the dark resp
many of its component parts. The Africa
Arabian geographers are extremely ignor
their own country, and in their maps a
scriptions have omitted the whole of that
tory, which lies between the Nile and th
Sea. Before the close of the fifteenth ce
Emanuel, king of Portugal, excited by a
of discovering a way to the East Indie
pointed a few ships for that expedition, v
doubled the Cape of Good Hope, and exp
the eastern and western coasts of the A
continent. A few factories, however, ne
sea, could have little or no opportunity
quiring a knowledge of the interior part
country, even had it accorded with the o
they had in view. It is to the honour of
land, that a society of noblemen and gentl
has associated for the purpose of explorin
internal regions of Africa, and whose disco
have thrown more light on the geograph
natural history of that continent, than a
united labours of two thousand years.

Africa is environed by the sea, excepting
the isthmus of Suez, which is a narrow ne
land of seventy miles in breadth, and v
unites it to Asia. It has been compared
irregular pyramid inverted, the northern
constituting the base, which runs along the
of the Mediterranean, and the Cape of
Hope forming the apex or top. Its utmo

om north to south, from Cape Bona, in the
erranean, to the Cape of Good Hope, is
thousand three hundred miles; and its
th from east to west, from Cape Verd to
Guarda-fui, near the straits of Babelman-
three thousand five hundred miles; the
including an extent from thirty-five de-
north latitude, to twenty-eight south, and
thirty-three degrees east to seventeen de-
west longitude from London. It appears,
ore, that nearly two-thirds of the continent
rica are situated within the torrid zone, and
he equator divides it almost in the middle.
northern part, however, is more exten-
nd most exposed to the vertical rays of
n, which being reflected from vast deserts
rning sand, the heat becomes excessive,
in many places, insupportable to Euro-

rica may be divided into four parts:
The islands which surround this continent
Mediterranean and Red Sea, and on the
n and western coasts.
The country of the whites, comprehending
t, Barbary, Numidia, or Biledulgerid, and
, or the Desert.
That of the blacks, including Nigritia, Gui-

Monemugi, Manica, Chicova, &c. and
rious nations, of which we shall afterwa
mention.

All the inhabitants of this vast c
though distinguished under a variety of
nations, according to their different si
tribes, and forms of government, are, i
less, commonly included in the two-fol
tion of Moors and Negroes, or of A
Africans. With respect to the ancien
tants of this country, who are very n
we might expect to find in so vast a tract
and so great a variety of nations, and
ments, a proportionable diversity of pe
lative to the qualifications of mind and
but, on the contrary, a general uniform
vades those various regions and people
the negro nations," says Mr. Park, "
under my observation, though divide
number of petty independent states,
chiefly by the same means, live nearly in
temperature, and possess a *wonderful si*
disposition."

It is remarkable, that the Negroes, h
soever when in health, are no sooner
with sickness, than they gradually bec
and whitish, according to the nature
teracy of the disease; but when dead
sume their original blackness. Most of
rican natives have been always addicte
latry, witchcraft, and other superstiti
and observances, which it is supposed they
from the ancient Egyptians. In many
Africa, however, some relics of Judaism
cernible. With respect to the Christian
we are told that it was established here

early period, by the eunuch of queen Candace; but in Abyssinia, where it was first propagated and established, and where it flourished for some time with great splendour, it has been miserably torn by factions and schisms. There is a variety of Christians, however, dispersed throughout Africa.

But the religion of Mahomet hath made the greatest and most rapid progress in this country. Whether, however, through the ignorance of its propagators, or the depravity of the converts, Mahometanism is here deprived of many of its austerities and most of its virtues. One would scarcely, indeed, imagine, nor would a faithful mussulman acknowledge, that it is the same religion, which the Arabian Prophet taught his disciples. The Negroes have neither mosques, nor observe any weekly festival.

The Africans are generally considered as an indolent and inactive people; but perhaps without much reason. The nature of the climate is, indeed, unfavourable to great corporeal exertions; but strictly and properly speaking, a people cannot be called indolent and inactive, whose sustenance is derived, not from the spontaneous productions of nature, but from personal labour. Some manufactures and mechanics, and the necessary arts of life, are known and practised by them.

Before the Europeans visited this continent, the commerce of Africa was inconsiderable, and principally confined to the eastern coasts, and to those of the Red Sea; and was chiefly carried on by the Arabs, Persians, Armenians, and Mahometans. Since that time, the Italians, French, English,

English, Dutch, Spaniards, and
settled several colonies and factories
parts. This trade chiefly consists of
ivory, and a great variety of odorife
The commerce with Africa promotes
and consumption of European comm
manufactures; as those of silken, w
linen; and of iron and copper, wro
great variety of utensils and warlike i

The Moors are supposed to ha
merly a different people from the A
racens, who extended themselves ove
parts of Africa, and spread their
its most western coasts. But they h
intermixed with that race, and have
many of their manners and custom
are scarcely to be distinguished from

The Arabs who abandoned the
and irregular mode of life, and settl
and villages, apply themselves to tra
nufactures; or employ their time in
and the breeding of camels and h
most considerable class of Arabs, he
sists of those who live in deserts
They are divided into separate tribes
each of which is subject to a chief o
exercises unlimited authority over
own horde, and acknowledges no all
common sovereign. They live in c

* "With the religion, they were prou
language, name, and origin of Arabs: the
strangers and natives was insensibly mingled
Euphrates to the Atlantic the same nation
be diffused over the sandy plains of Asia;
Gibbon.

re for them fresher and more verdant
. On account of these frequent de-
nts, they are obliged to make use of
d moveable tents, some of which are
ted of camels and goats hair. This
manufactured by the women in such a
that it is proof against the heaviest and
olent rains which fall in Africa. The
nts are rather a portable kind of hut,
d of the bark of trees, or of some sort
proper for the purpose, and so con-
to be erected, or taken down, with great
l expedition. Both kinds of tents are
ular form, the top of which projects in
e of a cone, and under it is placed the
, which serves instead of windows to
ie air and light.
women have not only the whole care and
ment of these houses, and of the rest of
ily affairs, but they are also doomed to
the meanest and most slavish employ-

cept their husbands; and if any Arab i
as not to possess a separate tent, or hu
receive visitors, and transact his busin
open air.

Next to their wives, the Arabs va
horses, or mares, the latter of which, on
of their milk, (which forms a part of th
and of the colts they produce, are estee
ferable. The mares and colts are admi
the tents, where they remain loose with
of the family, and frequently serve for
or bolsters on which the children recline
Arabs are extremely careful in the ch
preservation of their breed, and more
observing the genealogy of their horse
themselves.

The usual dress of the men is a kind
next the skin, which descends to the kn
suspended over a pair of drawers whi
the ancles. Over this, the richer Ar
a short jacket, called a caphtan, which
and strait sleeves, and is girt with a bro
surrounding the body several times. Th
tan is commonly made of fine cloth o
and sometimes, though very rarely, of s
among the inferior Arabs, it is manufac
blue or black cotton cloth. As they
belts, the scimitar, or cutlass, is gene
serted between the girdle and caphta
girdles are long and wide, manufactured
or cotton, and curiously embroidered.
of stockings is scarcely known in Afri
stead of shoes, they wear a kind of soc
of Morocco leather, and reaching to th

* M. Sonnini observes, that in Egypt the cat
customed to share the shelter of the Bedouins.

The common people usually have their heads and legs uncovered. The chief, however, of the tribe, and others also distinguished among them, adorn their heads with red caps, encircled by several rounds of white cotton, and formed in the shape of a turban.

The women wear long drawers, and shifts over them. Their caphtan is fastened to their bodies with a sash or girdle, similar to that of the men, but generally of more value, and having a greater variety of colours and embroidery. Over the caphtan, the female also wears a large mantle or robe, of a rich azure hue, which descends to the feet. Their heads and hands are covered with a veil; and their ears, necks, and arms, are adorned with rings and bracelets of gold and silver. Their feet are covered with socks, or pumps, similar to those of the men. The women, however, of inferior rank, cover their bodies with only a piece of cloth, which they wrap about their breasts, and which descends no lower than the knee. Instead of pearls and diamonds, these make use of pieces of coral or glass, with which they decorate the hair. They mark their foreheads, cheeks, and chin, with a kind of paint; but as this paint requires frequent renewal, they sometimes puncture it into the skin, which renders the impression indelible.*

The bread of the Arabs consists of millet, maize, or rice, made into cakes. Their drink is commonly water; but they brew a small liquor, and also distil a kind of spirit, sufficiently strong to intoxicate. They eat fish and flesh of several

* In Malta and some other places a similar custom prevails.

sorts, but never of both at one meal, nor large quantity. "The lives of the Bed says M. Sonnini, "simple, uniform, an jured by excesses, are extended to the ter by nature. They live to be very old, their advanced age, they are conspicuou respectable and truly patriarchal appear They are no less friendly and hospitable habitations to strangers who visit the whom they treat with singular frankn cordiality. "Here, (among the Arabs douins) that hypocritical politeness, tho expressions of civility, with which peo tually overwhelm each other in our fash circles in Europe, while they reciprocall to place no confidence, are unknown. simple and natural offers are made of equally simple, to refuse which would real pain in the minds of those who mak while the acceptance of their hospitable sure to fill them with gratitude, and at t time you run no risk of being burthens your host.†"

The Arabs are never instructed in the ledge of physic or philosophy. There sons, indeed, among them, who pretend skill in those sciences; but what they k them is acquired by experience, habit, tom, assisted by strength of memory an ness of invention. They have adopted ever, a regular course of pharmacy for d and of surgery for wounds and sores former chiefly consists of vegetables,

* Vide Travels in Upper and Lower Egypt.
† Sonnini's Travels.

utward applications. They have in-
noculation for the small-pox, but in a
ner than what is practised in China.
us and faithful Musselmen, however,
y inimical to all kinds of inoculations
isease; and they not only decry it as
is method of tempting Divine Provi-
recount a number of frightful stories,
deter the people from the practice.
Arabs in Africa, of whatever kind and
, are divided into tribes or families,
-wars. The chief's tent is always
its situation, which is in the center of
ar.* The sheicks, or chiefs, are gene-
ed with short pikes, or javelins, and
rt in using those weapons, that though
full gallop they seldom miss their
will kill a man at fifty, or hit the
a plate at forty paces distahce. They
a cutlass and a quiver of arrows; and
iemselves are very skilful in all kinds
y actions, so they are no less careful
who are under them, and their horses,
to the same exercise, insomuch that
and address of the one, and the doci-
etness of the other, in attacking or
om an enemy, are justly admired by
ans, who have been witnesses of their
and exploits. They make no use of
as they know not the manner of using
orseback, nor how to keep them in pro-
. The Arabs generally make a fu-

nini informs us, that the tent of Sheick Hus-
ne visited, was distinguished from the rest by
a large plume of black ostrich feathers, placed
it.

rious onset; but [illegible]
being overpov a, [illegible] nly dispe
avoid [illegible] of the enemy, and aft
rallying, [illegible] return the charge with
ble celerity. In those feigned retreats,
the greatest injury to enemies, who
acquainted with [illegible] nanner of fighting
are so inured to n ers of a military
from their infancy, that they consider
their greatest happiness, and pursue it
trepidity and bravery. They are pe
that Providence ordained it for them, an
fore never commence an attack witho
ing, in a serious and reverent manner, th
do it *in the name of God*, nor conclude a
ful expedition without repeating the wor
be praised!

Next to their warlike excursions, the
cipal and most delightful occupation is
or racing, in both of which they are no
tive and expert. Their marriages are
more than a bargain between the father
intended bride and her intended husband
consist for the most part, in an agreeme
the young man shall pay so many camels,
sheep, and cows, to the father of the
The purchase is no sooner concluded, th
young man is allowed to visit his futur
in a separate tent, where, attired in the b
most costly apparel and ornaments she
ford, she is prepared to receive him. T
relic of the ancient manner, in which th
archs married. The bride is then condu
her husband on horseback, or on a cam
accompanied with loud acclamations and

When an Arab dies, the women who

tent or hut alarm the whole dow-war, or
ict, with their outcries and lamentations,
are speedily joined in the same frightful
us by all the other females. The men,
ever, even the nearest relations to the de-
d, whatever inward grief they suffer, are
illing to express their feelings in any other
ner than by a grave and composed deport-
t. The corpse is carried to some neigh-
ing eminence, where it is deposited in a
e, and covered with earth. A mound of
s is then raised over it, which serves for a
ument, and for a defence against beasts of

hough the wandering Arabs are, for the
t part, Mahometans, they have no mosques
ughout this vast continent. The case, how-
, is otherwise with those who inhabit towns
villages, and are employed in trade or agri-
ire, and who have every where their places
orship.

he caravans which are made use of by this
r description of Arabs, in carrying on their
ic with the interior parts of Africa, fre-
ıtly perform a journey of seven hundred
ues in extent. They travel into the king-
of Tombuctoo, and other neighbouring
ons, where they procure of the inhabitants
, in exchange for trinkets, pieces of iron
brass, and other commodities of little value.
ıis journey they pass through a vast desert
ınd of two hundred leagues in length, in
h water is scarcely to be found. But the
dreadful and imminent dangers to which
raveller in this vast desert is subject, are the
winds. The following is the description

of

of one by Mr. Park, which happened
his confinement in the Great Desert.
force of the wind was not in itself very g
was what a seaman would have denomi
stiff breeze; but the quantity of sand and d
ried before it was such as to darken the
atmosphere. It swept along from east
in a thick and constant stream, and the
at times so dark and full of sand, that
difficult to discern the neighbouring t
Sometimes, however, we are assured, tha
tempests are so violent, that whole ca
have been buried beyond all possible reco

The African horses are small, but shaped, fleet, and beautifully coloured. of the Arabs, however, are by far the be most esteemed, not by the Africans only, strangers of every country. They exc other creatures, except the dant, in swift foot. The camel is the most useful and sary animal that Africa possesses. "W this beast, which nature formed to endur ger, thirst, and all the inconveniences att heat and drought, vast plains of san stones, and arid mountains rugged with would have proved insurmountable barri man: with him numerous troops trea moving sands, and exhibit a wonderful spe to the observer, who is astonished to behol in places which appear formed to repel thing that breathes; with him circulate

* Vide Park's Travels in the interior of Africa, p

† Somewhat similar to this appears Mr. Bruce's a of the moving pillars of sand in the deserts of whose tops reached the clouds, and whose moti exceeded that of the swiftest horse.

tre

treasures of the east; with him the solitary traveller fears not to enter the spacious void that separates one people from another.*"

The dromedary is a smaller and more slender species of the camel. It is no less useful for its swiftness than the other for the burthens it carries, and is generally employed for expedition. For ten days together it will travel at the rate of forty leagues a day, with a small pittance of barley and water.† It has protuberances on its back, which form a natural saddle for the rider. It can also endure hunger, thirst, and great fatigue. Other domestic animals, such as bulls, cows, asses, sheep, and goats, are also in great plenty and variety in Africa.

At the head of the catalogue of the wild or savage animals, which this country produces, we may justly place the elephant, which is a noble and excellent beast, and equally celebrated for its surprising qualities of sense, docility, courage, and usefulness, as for its superior strength and size above all other quadrupeds. In every part of Africa, however, it is wild, ferocious, and destructive; nor have any of the inhabitants of this vast continent attempted to tame this animal, and to render it serviceable. But whatever devastation the elephants make in the lands that are sown, and which seems to be done for the sake of sustenance, they never at-

* Sonnini's Travels in Upper and Lower Egypt.

† "The most extraordinary journey of this kind," says M. Sonnini, "which I ever heard mentioned, was made by a Bedouin, who was often pointed out to me at Cairo. He travelled from that city to Mecca, a distance of more than four hundred leagues, in five days; for which the caravan of pilgrims employs upwards of thirty days."

tack

tack men or wom ed o
asperated by ab .

The rhinocer , ich der its ppell from the horn on its , is likewise a nati Africa; and though this animal is inferi bulk to the elephant, it ex els him in the be and comeliness of its shape and skin, the l of which is surprisingly variegated with spe in tufts of black and grey. The back of animal appears to be adorned with a na saddle, and its sides and ribs extend, as if bossed, down to its belly. The skin of its is so hard, that a lance will scarcely pene it; and its hide is so deeply furrowed, as t pear armed with scales. The nose resem that of a boar, on the top of which grows horn erect and perpendicular, and which is lighter or darker brown, according to the a the animal. There is a manifest differenc tween the rhinoceros of Africa and Asia; of the latter having but one horn on its and the other having besides this a second forehead, and a third on its back.*

The next in rank and size is the g called by the Arabs zarafa, and by Pli other ancients camelopard, from its be spots, resembling the leopard. It is ab height of a camel, but much more slen finely shaped. Its hind legs are cons shorter than those before: a circumstan gives the animal a grand and majestic

* Mr. Bruce tells us, that the Agageers, or the rhinoceros, assert they frequently meet that have three horns, none of which are ot but all growing in a straight line, and nearly p to the *os frontis*, or nose.

; especially as its neck rises in an almost
ght ascent, and terminates in a small and
iful head, similar to that of a deer or an-
e. The skin of its breast is smooth, and
; the hair a mixture of black and white;
il long and slender, and its gait and pace
and gradual; excepting when frighted or
ied, when it becomes extremely fleet and
le. These animals generally frequent woods
deserts, avoid the habitations and sight of
and never associate with other quadrupeds.
great inconvenience, however, attends their
front, and the great length of their fore-
; without much difficulty they cannot graze
ie ground, but generally feed on the leaves
branches of trees.

ie dante, or lante, is about the size of a buf-
, or wild bull, but much slenderer in its
, and more capable of moving with cele-

It is naturally wild, very shy, and being
rise swift of foot, it is difficult to catch or
ake it, except in the summer season, when
urning sand parches and shrivels its hoofs
ch a degree, that it is disabled from run-

At all other times those animals run with
incredible speed, that no other creature is
to keep pace with them. It would extend
nd the limits of this rapid survey, to notice
ie animals existing on this vast continent;
e it, therefore, to observe, with regard to
est, that lions, tigers, leopards, panthers,
es, foxes, buffaloes, wild boars, hyænas, elks,
, roebucks, and monkies, are to be found in
: abundance and variety in many districts
frica, and some of them in each.

ie ostrich is certainly the most singular of

the winged tribe. This inhabitant of
and barren deserts of Africa seems to
ture the link of gradation between the fe
and animal creation. The general opi
that its food consists of whatever subs
happens to meet with, whether of iron
wood, bones, leather, or vegetables. T
gular and surprising circumstance has
many naturalists to consider the accour
bulous and incredible. Upon dissectio
ever, the stomach of the ostrich is four
so constructed, as to form an exception
general principles of either birds or quac
The head of this bird is small in propo
the size of its body; the bill is short and
the legs thick and strong, and the feet are
and resemble those of a goat. They ar
rally found in great numbers in the dry a
ren deserts of Africa, but especially in
plies of Abyssinia, Monomotapa, Moroc
Biledulgerid. Mr. Adamson says, thos
negal were so large, strong, and swift,
have seen two boys ride upon one for
mile, whose velocity was equal to the s
of the fleetest courser. The Arabs h
tricles, and consider it as a mark of gre
ess to be able to catch them; this, how
not to be effected by means of speed, but
fice. The Arab, on horseback, pursues
tricts, and prevents him from feeding, l
ing constantly in sight. Having thus h
him for several days, the horseman s
darts upon him at full gallop, and dri
against the wind, to prevent the blood
juring the fine white of the plumes, and,
terously throwing a stick between his l

strich perform that office in rotation.

es, vultures, hawks, herons, pelicans, and
rnivorous birds, abound in great num-
d variety in almost every part of Africa.
ser werk, or golden eagle, is supposed by
uce to be one of the largest birds that
ne which that celebrated traveller had
osity to measure, was from wing to wing
et four inches; from the tip of his tail to
t of his beak, four feet seven inches; and
hed twenty-two pounds. His middle
s about two and a half inches long; and
i bald head, and remarkably small eyes.
owing curious account of the manner of
one of these noble birds, and of examin-
ien dead, is related by Mr. Bruce:—
the highest top of the mounta'n Lamal-
ile my servants were refreshing them-
im that toilsome rugged ascent, and en-
ie pleasure of a most delightful climate,

f to rec
ran for their lances: sn
near to him as I had time to do
was fully fixed upon the meat. I saw
his foot into the pan, where was a larg
water, prepared for boiling; but fi
smart he did not expect, he withdre
quitted the piece which he held. T
two large pieces, a leg and a shoul
upon a wooden platter: into these he
talons of both feet, and carried them o
still looked wistfully at the large pie
remained in the warm water; away
slowly as he came, with his booty.
vants assured me he would return.
minutes after, he did so, to the grea
my attendants. Having loaded a rifl
ball, I took my aim so exactly, that he
without giving a single flutter. Up
hold of his monstrous carcase, I was
to find my hands tinged and colour
yellow powder, or dust. Examining th
on his back, I found they produced
dust. This powder, or dust, by the
glass of great magnifying power, I ob
be an infinite number of feathers, perfe
ed, although altogether imperceptib
naked eye." It need scarcely be
that birds which are domesticated, as
kies, hens, ducks, pigeons, &c. are in
able numbers throughout this country

In the early ages of society men
concerning the production of animal
the first obvious principle, without re
the first great cause of all things. Fr
it is probable, we may trace the religi

ch ascribed to the sun, the centre of
honours of the Deity; inasmuch as
ared to be the chief cause of vege-
the supporter of animal life. But,
it and correct the opinion of the
supposing that animated life was
id propagated by moisture and the
ie sun; yet, as it is evident, that an
elligent, and plastic power, consti-
ments of life and motion, a seminal
nciple would still be wanting in the
nd propagation of vegetables, rep-
ials.

ounds with a dreadful variety of
vipers, some of which are of a pro-
gth and size, and are so subtle and
is to infest the roads, and even to
in quest of their prey. The cerastes,
ich naturalists have mentioned in all
ily on account of the malignancy of
but also of its medicinal virtues,
particular attention. It is from thir-
teen inches in length; its head is
nd flat, and in the upper jaw has
teeth, hollow and crooked inward,
markably fine polish. Under these
ained the bag or reservoir of poison,
idering the size of the reptile, is very
l appears like a drop of laudanum.
y after the cerastes has bitten any
power of doing farther injury is not
ut lessened.

he noxious animals which infest the
Africa, besides those of the serpent
ideous insect, resembling a reptile,
led a scorpion, whose sting is deem-

oil, in which a bruised scorpion has

The cameleon is a reptile very every part of Africa. It resembl but carries a more erect head, whi the horns, is not dissimilar to that c tail is about a span long, and its those of a monkey. In the descr animal, naturalists have greatly opinion; some asserting that it live according to Leo Africanus, gaped and setting of the sun. It is now, nerally known, that the food of consists of insects, that it takes by of the tongue, which is a kind of about half an inch long, and holl its throat by a strong membraneo Dr. Russell has observed, that wh leon is removed to a place differe from where it was found, it gradu that of the ground whereon it is found on the grass, it is green; if branch, or the trunk of a tree, its co of that of the bark; if put in a b black or white, it will assume the one, or of the other. The eyes a piercing, though without eye-lids; a moves them backward and forw and downward; but one forward, tl ward; or one downwards, the othe

But, perhaps, the locust is a n and destructive insect than any of reptiles. This, however, is not c power it possesses as an individu

f propagation; by which means
in such swarms, that they de-
country and make it a desolate

nearly surrounded by the sea,
with numbers of lakes and ri-
eat plenty and variety of salt and
. Of the former, the shark is the
e that frequents the African and
s. This voracious fish is twenty-
th; its mouth is armed with a
eth, which are extremely sharp;
of its jaw are so strong, that it
to bite a man asunder at once.
, so called on account of its hav-
nce of possessing two hands, with
its young close to its breast, is
plenty on the coast of Africa. It
inary size, and frequently weighs
een hundred pounds; its length
its diameter four or five feet. Its

the north[illegible], a curious but truly de-
resented itself. It was a troop of locusts
ground. They covered a space of about
extent so completely, that the surface
, at a little distance, to have been burnt
ith brown ashes. Not a shrub, nor blade
. The waggons passed directly through
n they rose up in a cloud that darkened
. Desirous of seeing the whole troop
Iottentots ran amongst them, and the
to gallop through them, but without
such as were immediately under the
d horses rose up. The peasantry affirm
o be driven away, unless the signal for
e given from their commander in chief,
posed to accompany every troop.—*Bar-
thern Africa.*

eyes are small and dim, and its sight is weak; defect which is amply compensated by the exq siteness of smell and hearing. The least n most distant noise, whether at sea or land, w greatly alarm and terrify it. The Africans a very expert in catching this animal, which h an exquisite taste, and superior to the Medi ranean sturgeon; especially from the middle the ribs to the belly; but its most delicious p is the udder.

There are several pearl fisheries both on t eastern and western coasts, the most consid able and valuable of which are near some sm islands, opposite the kingdom Sofola.* T people, however, who are employed in this cupation, instead of exposing the shell to warmth of the sun, which would induce them open, lay them on embers, by which absurd imprudent method, they contract a dull kin redness, which deprives them of their nat lustre and value. The oyster is generally lieved to be the species of fish in which this luable matter is found; but Mr. Bruce, a much search and inquiry, was perfectly satis th in the Red Sea, where pearls are found, no oysters. By means of the information, h ever, which that ingenious traveller rece from the natives of those parts, and from number of pearls which he procured, he was convinced that they are only to be found in muscle, the pinna, and one resembling the oy which are shells that are bivalves.

* Mr Bruce and some others are of opinion, that S was the Ophir of the ancients, whither Solomon sen gold and silver, with which to decorate the temple of rusalem.

ie eastern and western coasts of this
nent abound with ambergris, which
onsiderable branch of commerce with
peans and other nations. The natives
nd Mosambico at first despised it, and
l it as the excrescence of whales cast
oasts by the winds and waves; but no
re they acquainted with its real value,
endeavoured to convert it to the great-
tage. The most precious and valuable
iich is of an ashen or grey colour.

most valuable commodity, with which
of the world abounds, is gold dust,
most places lies within five or six feet
rface of the earth, and may be procur-
ut that immense labour and danger,
cessarily attend operations for that pre-
al in the mines of India and America.
e African coast was discovered, the
ze, Dutch, and other Europeans, ex-
ich marks of eagerness and cupidity in
gold, and employed such a variety of
ase, and violent means, to procure and
from the simple and unsuspecting na-
t they spread an universal alarm and
among them. And many of the Afri-
r since that time, have considered all
ns as equally combined in depriving
their just and unalienable right to a
which, of itself, is sufficient to procure
that is valuable, curious, or useful, in
rt of the world: nor need we wonder at
idice, when we recollect the conquests
isive settlements which foreigners have
the eastern and western coasts, or the
id tyrannical measures by which they

hav

have always endeavoured to maintain t
quisitions.

The continent of Africa is intersec
great variety of considerable mountai
Greater and Lesser Atlas were well kn
celebrated by the ancients: the forme
more than a thousand leagues from east
from the coast of Mazra to the Atlantic
which it gives name; the latter stretch
the shores of the Mediterranean, from the
of Gibraltar to the city of Bona, on
coast. Those most remarkable for the
are the mountains of the Moon, betwe
synia and Ethiopia; the Sierra Leona,
Guinea and Negroland; the mountains
tal, near the celebrated lake of Zaflan; a
mountain, at the Cape of Good Hope,
minated from its square figure.

ered by Mr. Bruce in Abyssinia, though
ennel, on the authority of Ptolemy, is of
n, that a branch of this celebrated river
ts rise near the mountains of the Moon.
the great rivers of Africa chiefly pervade
id level countries, though occasionally in-
ted by cataracts in hilly districts, abound-
barren deserts, they are favourable to inland
ation, were the genius of the people turned
mmerce. Africa is not populous in pro-
n to its extent. In the Great Desert, which
is from west to east, behind Mount Atlas,
arallel to Barbary, and also in smaller de-
n the northern part of this continent, there
s a phenomenon peculiar to the country.
is the oases, or isolated fertile spots, which
terspersed through the sandy waste, like
s in the ocean, are covered with beautiful
efreshing verdure, and abound with water,
ich wanted in such arid tracts. This mo-
as compared by the ancients to a leopard's

ter this geographical account of the conti-
of Africa, we subjoin a sketch of its history;
in connecting its modern with its ancient
ry, we shall observe, that Genseric, a war-
prince of the Vandals, had no sooner suc-
d his brother Gunderic in the king- A. D.
of Gallicia, than he was invited into 428.
a by the rebellious Bonifacio. At-
d by the advantageous offers of the count,
nore perhaps by his own ambitious designs,
adily acceded to the proposal; and having
ded himself with a sufficient number of
ports *for conveying* his troops over the
s *of Gibraltar*, he landed an army of
twenty

twenty-four thousand men on the coasts of bary. In the mean time Bonifacio, whom cessity and self-preservation had impelled this measure, having been re-admitted into favour of the imperial court, was much gri at the arrival of the Vandals, and endeavo by the most splendid and gratifying promis prevail with Genseric to return with his tr into Spain. These proposals, however, wer ceived by the Vandal chieftain with the ut contempt and disdain; and Bonifacio had mortification to discern, that Genseric was lutely bent to settle in Africa, and to lay foundation of a new kingdom, from whenc might transport his victorious troops into heart of Italy.

How long it was after Genseric's landin the coast of Africa, that his rage and resent were excited against the orthodox clergy, au are not agreed; but probably, not till he

A. D. 442. compelled the Romans to cede and rantee to him all his conquests by tr The Arian heresy, which he introdu and propagated with a furious and fan zeal, involved the whole country in all the ries of a religious war. The orthodox cl were the greatest objects of his cruelty, only on account of the vigorous defence made against him, as an invader, a barbari heretic and apostate, but because of their su in converting the Moors from paganism an latry. Many of the clergy were condemn [illegible] dreadful than death, and ag vated with every circumstance of horror cruelty. The places appointed for their ba ment, and for the scenes of their suffering,

of the most barren and dreary deserts in
ry.

he midst of these persecutions, an occur-
happened, which suspended the execution
nseric's cruel designs, during the remainder
reign. Zeno, who was now raised to the
al throne had been compelled to conclude
e with Genseric, and to renounce all claim
African conquests; but knowing that the
l monarch had entered into an alliance
ie warlike Odoacer, he thought proper, by
f precaution, to send an embassy to con-
ie peace. Genseric being now advanced
rs, and desirous of leaving his son and
sor Huneric in quiet and peaceable pos-
of his recently established kingdom,
embraced that opportunity of renewing
onfirming his former treaties with Zeno.
he prudent and politic Severus, who had
ppointed ambassador, on this occasion, by
perial court, removed the aversion of Gen-
o the orthodox Christians, and procured
lease of many Romans who had been
risoners in Africa. Genseric, however,
t long observe the peace which he had
ded with the emperor; but being repulsed
ttempts, he was extremely mortified

and to the singular disregard and conte
with which he treated the menaces and
plaints of the emperor Leo.

He was succeeded by his eldest son Hun
who not only inherited his father's ferocity
hatred towards the orthodox Christians, bu
ceeded him in both; and during his short r
of less than eight years, exercised greater c
ties against the African church than his f
had displayed in his despotism of sixty.

Though Huneric left a son, whom he ha
the princess Eudocia, Gutamund, the gran
A. D. of Genseric, in conformity to the wi
496. his grandfather, succeeded him in
kingdom. In the commencement o
reign, this prince treated the catholics with
cruelty; but when he had obtained quiet
session of the crown, he became affected wi
sense of the many and dreadful calamities, w
his uncle's furious and untimely zeal had bro
upon them, and was, therefore, resolved eff
ally to terminate the still raging persecu
He recalled those pious sufferers, who had
lived the miseries and fatigues of their exile,
restored them to their churches and flocks,
to the free and unrestrained exercise of
religious functions. In the midst, howeve
these pious actions, died Gutamund, in the tw
year of his reign.

His brother Trasamund, a prince of opp
principles and temper, succeeded him in
kingdom. The persecution against the orth
was renewed with great fury; and an incre
number of the secular clergy were expelle
kingdom. One hundred and twenty bi
were also banished into the island of Sar

ist unavoidably have perished through
d misery, had not Symmachus, who then
Peter's chair, taken them under his care
ection, and, by the public and charitable
tions of Christians, added to his own
assistance, secured to them a comfortable
ance in their exile. Thrasamund em-
every opportunity of enlarging the do-
and reducing many of his Moorish
nder his subjection; and the rest were
ibutary to him, or firmly attached to his
Civil and intestine wars divided and
d the strength of the Ostrogoths and
s of Spain and Italy; and there was
y, at that time, capable of opposing and
g his designs. After a reign of twenty-
s, Thrasamund died at Carthage, the
sidence of his predecessors, in the quiet
ceable possession of his kingdom.

ric, the grandson of Genseric, from
n oath had been extorted by the late
at he should make no alterations in the
and government which he had
ed, succeeded Thrasamund on A. D. 524.
one. But, notwithstanding the
and obligations of this oath, he had no
received the reins of government, than he
lled and repealed all the acts and edicts of
ecessors in favour of Arianism and sub-
of orthodoxy, recalled all those who had
nished by Thrasamund, and restored to
eir churches, their functions, and former
es. These measures of Hilderic excited
rize and indignation of the Arians, who
ter appeared in open rebellion, at the
which was Gilimer, one of the princes

of the blood. The cont was terminat decisive and bloody battle, in which the dent and unfortunate Hilderic was de taken prisoner, and deprived at once of his and his crown.

Immediately after this victory, Gilimer the vacant throne, and was crowned k Africa. Hilderic and his family were l close confinement; and their friends and sans were treated with the greatest The triumph of Gilimer, however, wa and fleeting. The emperor Justinian, n standing the other wars in which he w engaged, was prevailed on to send a nu and powerful fleet and army against the u under the conduct of the celebrated Bel Gilimer also equipped a squadron of sl means of which he obtained possession of of Tripoli and the island of Sardinia; sooner was he informed of the preparatic approach of Belisarius, than the unhap deric, with his whole family and neare tions, was cruelly put to death.

The management of the war was cor by Gilimer to his two brothers, Gundi Gelamund, who, at the head of a numer powerful body of troops, attacked the

his unhappy fate, Belisarius embracing
ortunity of rallying his soldiers, whom
t, of Gilimer's troops of reserve had
and terrified, led them back to the
and gained a complete victory; and
was soon after compelled to surrender
o the Roman general.

diately after this signal victory, Belisa-
ched his troops to Carthage, which he
in triumph and without opposition;
ceeding to the royal palace, took pos-
f the throne of Gilimer, and of his im-
ealth and treasure, restored the churches
rthodox Christians, and compelled the
to swear allegiance to the Roman em-
Gilimer, having by some means recovered
y, recalled his brother Tzazon from the
n conquests to his assistance, and it was
y resolved by them, to make another des-
ttempt for regaining their kingdom, by
g the newly fortified metropolis.

rius being apprised of the intentions
nemy, considered it as more prudent and
it to lead out his forces than to trust to
fications of the city, or the fidelity of the
; and having animated his troops by an
c and appropriate speech, marched at
id against the Vandalic army. Gilimer
brother, also used every means in their
) inspire their soldiers with courage and
on this trying and important occa-
The right and left wings of the Vandalic
ere composed of Moors, commanded by
vn chieftains; the centre consisted of
, whom Gilimer had forbidden to use
er weapon than their swords; and his

brother, with his own troops, was
The onset was furious and dreadful o
Belisarius dispatched one of his brav
with a numerous and powerful body
across a nameless river, which divi
armies, this officer was twice repu
enemy, and compelled to retreat;
ing to the attack the third time, with t
standard, and a greater number of m
ful carnage of the enemy ensued: T
eight hundred of his best troops, was
battle, and the rest of the Vandalic
themselves to flight. The Romans
only fifty men, Belisarius marched
to the enemy's camp, and Gilimer, i
consternation and dismay, mounted
and, attended only by a few soldie
road towards Numidia. The disgr
of their leader occasioned such a
confusion among the troops, that they
their camp to the Romans, who s
wealth and riches it contained, put
death, and reduced the woman to sla
defeat entirely subverted and destroye
power in Africa, and the Romans f
selves once more possessed of that
sirable country.

Belisarius pursued the fugitive ki
sought refuge among the Moors, on t
mountain, where he was besieged by
Roman officers; and being destitute
cessaries of life, and in the utmost
finally constrained to surrender hi
soner. When the unhappy Gilimer
royal robes, was introduced to Justi
stantinople, he was bound with cha

This was readily granted, and an ample
lso given him for his subsistence; but he
long enjoy the beneficence of Justi- A. D.
is he died of grief, in the fifth year 534.
unhappy reign, and the first after
tivity.

s was Africa again reduced to the obedi-
f the Greek emperors, who appointed
ls, or præfects, to retain it in subjection.
ndals and Moors, however, were not so
r destroyed or subjugated, but they were
to unite their forces against the Greeks,
er a favourable opportunity of succeed-
uld present itself. These discontents and
probably encouraged the plundering
and Saracens, who had already invaded
nquered Syria, Palestine, and Egypt, to
heir arms into the countries of the west,
it is, that the conquest of Africa, A. D.
ne Nile to the Atlantic ocean, was

under the power of the Romans
who knew no subjection to any co
reign, and could ill endure the tyr
thority of the Arabian sheiks. "
of Akbah had proposed to found
colony in the heart of Africa; a
might curb the levity of the barbar
of refuge to secure, against the acci
the wealth and the families of the Sa
this view, and under the modest tit
tion of a caravan, he planted the
Cairoan."*

Obeid-ullah, the founder of the
nasty, made Cairoan the place of
and the capital of his dominions; v
the foundations of a greater and
city in its neighbourhood, which h
ed Mehedie, from a surname whic
sumed to himself. He died in the
year of his reign, the sixty-third of
in the three hundred and twenty-s
Hegira.

Obeid-ullah was succeeded by hi
Cassim, of whom nothing more is r
thy of notice, than that a strong
faction having been raised against
under the necessity of fortifying hi
castle of Mehedie. The insurger
reduced Cairoan, Tunis, and sever
tresses, and having defeated a consi
of troops, which the caliph had ra
to impede their progress, they mar
to the castle, in which Abu-'l-Ca
trenched, whom they closely besieg

* Gibbon.

months. The caliph was reduced to such distress, through want of provisions, that he would soon have been compelled to surrender to the besiegers, had not death terminated his anxiety and his reign. He was succeeded by his martial son Ishmael, who assumed to himself the title or surname of Al Mansûr, and soon after his accession to the throne, revenged the affront offered to his father by his disaffected and rebellious subjects. A. D. 945.

Al Mansûr for several months concealed his father's death, whilst, in the mean time, he made proper and necessary preparations for attacking the insurgents with a force sufficient for ensuring success, and thereby at once terminating the revolt. He obliged the rebels to raise the siege of Mehedie, which he entered in triumph; and having obtained two signal victories, he compelled them to retire into the strong fortress of Cutama, where he closely besieged them. Yezid, who was at the head of the revolt, defended the place a long time with great vigour and bravery, but perceiving his efforts in vain, and that the garrison would be obliged to capitulate, he privately withdrew from the fortress. Al Mansûr finding the principal victim of his resentment escaped, immediately dispatched a number of forces in pursuit of him, whom they took after a vigorous and desperate resistance, in which he received several wounds that occasioned his death a few days after. With an useless refinement of cruelty, Al Mansûr caused the body of Yezid to be flayed, and his skin to be stuffed and exposed to the public view; and having entered his capital in triumph a second time, he commanded that Yezid's death, and the total A. D. 952.

suppression

suppression of the rebellion, should
ed throughout his dominions. Ex
courage and eloquence, Al Mansúr
hedie, in the three hundred and fo
of the Hegira, after a short reign o
and sixteen days.

Abu Zammim Moad, his son, v
the title and surname of Al Moez
Al Mansûr. The conquest of Egy
had always in view after the comm
his reign, though all his predecesso
in the enterprize, he did not begin t
the three hundred and fifty-eighth
Hegira, when he committed the ma
the expedition to his faithful and ex
neral Jaafar. This undertaking di
Al Moezz from an attention to hi
quests; and he was at Tripoli, whe
the agreeable, and, perhaps, unexpe
tion, that his general had made hi
of Alexandria. He immediately e
that city, and committed the gover
other dominions in Africa to the ca
intendance of an approved and fav
He landed at Alexandria, amidst t
repeated acclamations of the people,
a new Egyptian dynasty, which was

government, and established themselves in Abdulgerid, Lybia, and Barbary. After the Caliphs had transferred their power and title to Egypt, the glory and unity of the empire gradually and entirely vanished. From Egypt to the Straits of Gibraltar, the country harassed by intestine war, among the petty and independent princes who occupied it, and by the destructive attacks of the Spaniards and other European powers, has at length become the domain and the resort of a horde of pirates and robbers, which political jealousy prevents from being extirpated.

CHAP. II.

Of the African Islands.

I shall now give a brief history of the insular appendages of the African continent, of which are supposed to have been the islands of antiquity, though for many their situation was unknown to the rest of world. The same barbarism, which extended itself over the continent, spread its baneful effects on every side, and brooding incumbent on the relics and powers of genius, enervated the arm of industry, furled the sail of commerce, and left the nations destitute and ignorant of the arts and of each other.

BABELMANDEL. Commencing our narrative of the islands in the Indian Ocean, we begin with Babelmandel, which gives name to the strait at the entrance of the Red Sea, and is situated in 13 degrees of north latitude, and in 43 de-

43 degrees 33 minutes of east longi
the Arabian and Abyssinian coasts. T
pians and Arabians formerly carried
sant wars for the possession of this th
tant island, which commands the pa
the South Sea, and preserves a comm
with the ocean: but the Turks being
ters of both coasts, and the commoditi
being no longer carried through tha
it is nearly deserted. The circum
this island is not more than five mil
produces neither fruits, grain, nor herl

BARBARA. Opposite to the kingdo
is the island Barbara, the inhabitant
are negroes, who are industrious in
employ themselves in the breeding of
which the soil affords excellent pastu
general, all the inhabitants of the i
coasts of the Red Sea, carry on a
able commerce with the natives o
but the rich trade in drugs, precious
bergris, and musk, has been greatly
since the Dutch established so power
mercial empire in the East Indies.

ZOCOTRA. The island of Zocot
cotra, is situated in the Eastern Ocea
grees 12 minutes of north latitu
leagues from Cape Guarda-fui; an
eighty miles in length, and fifty-four
Though the climate is excessively hot
is populous, and the soil yields most
and plants common to tropical situ
considerable quantities of frankinc
tragacanth, dates, rice, and rema
also; which articles are principall
to Goa, and other parts of the E

handsome, and their features nearly re-
those of Europeans. The island, how-
s in subjection to the Arabs, who occupy
st and most fruitful situations. The dress
se islanders consists of a stuff made of
hair, formed into long gowns, which are
d round the waist with a sash: they have
sort of long cloaks, which are thrown
the shoulders, and wrapped round the
body. They subsist on the flesh and
f their cattle, with dates, rice, and herbs.
ocotrans are in general pagans, and wor-
ie sun and moon; but the Arabs, who
ie governing body, are Mahometans.
h inhabiting an island, and trading with
ntinent, they are extremely ignorant of
tion, and have no other vessels than flat-
ied boats, with which, however, they are
keep the sea, even in great storms. Ca-
which is the only city in the island, is

distant from the shore. It is about leagues from north to south, and th east to west. On every part of the found large quantities of white cora great variety of shells of the most forms and colours. The whole isla vided by rivers, brooks, and running which give fertility to the soil, and a beauty of the scenery. In every part tations of rice, millet, yams, fruit and bles, of which two crops are annu duced. The sugar-cane grows spont and the tobacco plant is equal to that rica. These islanders employ them the cultivation of rice, yams, pease, a which form their principal subsistence.

Bourbon. The isle of Bourbon, situated in 21 degrees of south latit 54 of east longitude from London, a eighty leagues to the eastward of Ma is of an oval form, and ninety miles ir ference. This island is beautifully d with hills and vallies, forests and p and refreshed with a number of c springs and rivulets. Though the c intensely hot, it is esteemed salubri the air is cooled by the breezes whi every morning and evening. Bourbon in fruit, herbs, and cattle; it produc lent tobacco; and a great variety o roots, and spices grow spontaneously of the trees which bear different gums; v river are well stocked with fish, the c land and sea turtles, and every part is over with neat cattle, hogs, goats, anc beautiful birds. Ambergris, coral,

a with, blind rocks, which render navi-
it all seasons dangerous; and on the
extremity is a volcano, which conti-
mits flame, smoke, and sulphur, ac-
ed with a hideous and tremendous noise.
nd was discovered by the Portuguese
who stocked it with hogs and goats, and
erted it. In 1613 an English com-
named Castleton, having landed on it,
med with its beauty and fertility, and
upon it the appellation of the English
Our East India Company, however,
never colonized this island, the French
session of it in 1654, and named it the
Bourbon; but a few people of that na-
h several negroes, were all that were
it; who having resided there upwards
ears, were brought away by an English
gether with a large cargo of tobacco,
s, and coral, which they had cultivated
ected during their stay on the island:

tuated the island of Mauritius, which is i
grees of south latitude, and 56 of east lo
and distant a hundred leagues from Mad
The Dutch, who first discovered it in 15
it the appellation of Mauritius, in h
Prince Maurice, who was at that ti
stadtholder. It is of an oval form, bei
50 leagues in circumference; and there
and secure harbour, sufficiently deep
pacious for containing fifty large ship
climate is reckoned healthy and pleasa
the mountains, some of which are very lo
duce the finest ebony in the world, and
other trees of great value. A number
lets descend from the hills, that are pl
stocked with fish, and render the soil sur
fertile, which produces sugar-canes,
rice, and various fruits, and affords p
for great numbers of cattle.

When the Dutch first took possession
ritius, they found it destitute of inhabita
even of animals, except deer and go
with their usual industry, they rendere
tile and productive, and the island soon
ed with cattle of almost every des
They resigned it, however, into the h
the French, in whose possession it h
continued.

MADAGASCAR. We come now to M
car, which is reckoned by geographer
not only the largest island of Africa,
the world, unless New Holland sh
thought to fall under the descriptio
island. Different nations have given it
appellations: the natives call it Madac
Portuguese St. Laurence; the Frenc

D

); and the Nubians, Persians, and Ara-
erandib. It is situated between the
nd twenty-sixth degrees of south lati-
d between the forty-fourth and fifty-
rees of east longitude from London, and
ty leagues from the continent of Africa.
from north to south is nearly one thou-
s; and its breadth, at a medium, two
and fifty miles. Between this island
continent, the sea forms a channel or
through which European vessels com-
l in their voyage to and from India.
neral appearance of the country is plea-
ile, and inviting; it is environed by
ntains, and diversified by numerous
nd fruitful plains. The productions
, honey, vegetables, vines, fruit-trees,
gums, spices, corn, cattle in great
e and variety, wild and tame fowls,
tones, iron, silver, copper, tin, and steel.
rage for cattle is excellent, the forests
green, and the rivers, some of which
considerable, are plentifully stocked
To these local advantages we may
hat the air is esteemed temperate and
.

itives are commonly tall, well-pro-
, and of an olive complexion, which
black. Unlike the negroes of Guinea,
is not woolly, though black and cur-
noses are small, but regular; and
are of moderate thickness. The ge-
s consists of a short piece of cotton
lk, wrapped round their waists, which
lamber; but persons of rank of both
ldition to this, adorn their wrists with

rings of the most valuable metal, and w
they also braid their hair. The wor
lambers or robes, which reach to their
are covered with a garment resemblin
shift. This covering is commonly ma
ton, dyed of a dark colour, and trim
beads, which are fancifully arranged.

Polygamy is practised throughout t
and every man enjoys a plurality of
cording to the extent of his fortune.
accurate and best informed writers,
affirm, that the females are exemplar
conjugal obedience, their amiableness
sition, and agreeableness of deportmen
inhabitants, in general, are considered
ing many virtues, which perhaps are r
by greater and more numerous vices,
which are commonly practised in more r
civilized countries. The salutation of
which is esteemed most respectful, an
rally used by those who address the p
lick his feet; and this abject mode of su
also practised by the wives, when their
return from the wars, or after a lon
The art of coinage is utterly unkno
this people; and gold and silver are
use of in ornamenting the person, or i
for other commodities. Their prine
and resource, therefore, consist in th
and value of their cattle.

The sovereigns of Madagascar aff
deal of pomp and parade. They exer
controuled and unlimitable power ov
and fortunes of their subjects, to w
give audience, sitting cross-legged
Great numbers of noblemen and sl

y attend them; and they have a variety of es, which, though far exceeding the huts abitations of the rest of the people, consist of boards formed by the hatchet, and raised height of eight or ten feet.

ese princes, however, keep no regular or ng army, but when an emergency de- s it, employ vassals for the purpose. Their er of waging war is by surprize and am- de; and when an advantageous opportu- ffers, they assemble privately, and attack emy unawares, and before he can be made inted with their design. They employ o discover, and make known to them, the nd condition of the foe. During the war, equently change their residence, and their are driven to the highest mountains and st inaccessible situations. Parties of thirty y men are dispatched to plunder and de- e lesser villages, and to make captives of abitants. These marauders, in case of , are generally provided with billets in arabic characters, which they firmly will dispel the strength and courage of emies, and occasion their defeat. Hav- en and burned the town, they make the and children prisoners, and drive the

partiality or indulgence. Punishme
pital offences are few, and indeed se
sary; but fines, which are paid in ca
quent, and levied on the slightest ar
vial occasions. Theft is punished by
times the value of that which is st
the offender cannot restore cattle
amount, he must become the proper
jured person, or forfeit his life. A
the wife of a superior must be ex
forfeiture of thirty head of cattle, b
and other articles: but with the wife
by a fine of only twenty. An assaul
by a fine of fifteen head of cattle.

The religion of these islanders i
and consists of a gross and idolatr
tion. They acknowledge, howeve
ence and superintendence of a Sup
whom they call Deaan Unghorray
signifies "The Lord above;" but
tain that there are four other subor
each of whom presides over that
world to which he is appointed.
are considered as the immediate se
great God; and as mediators betw
man; and, therefore, to them the
their supplications and prayers,
their religious sacrifices. It is wor
vation, that among these ignorant
tious people there exists some fain
of the creation and fall of man;
Abel; the Deluge; the preservati
and his family; and some other
of a similar nature.

Circumcision is performed in th
in a different manner from that of

ietans. The ceremony is preceded by drinking, and feasting: after which an ox is presented for each child, and fastened ground, ready for immolation. The father, est connection, then takes the child in his owards the animal to be sacrificed, and its right hand on the bull's right horn, is—"Let the great God above, the lords four quarters of the world, and the guar- irits, prosper and protect this child, and him to become mighty; let him equal ll in strength, and overcome all his ene- Having thus spoken, the circumciser is his office; after which the child is de- to its mother, or nearest kin, and a feast les the ceremony.

evident, from every circumstance of the gious rites which the inhabitants of Ma- ir perform, that they believe in a future existence. The memory of their forefa- cherished by them with the greatest ve- ; and, in their funeral solemnities, they marks of a decent and becoming solem- Every family has a place appropriated as itory for its dead, which is enclosed by a palisadoes, and is never entered without ng an ox or a cow to the manes of the . When any person is to be interred, ncipal or chief of the family approaches rance of the cemetery; and calling aloud the dead deposited there, informs them ch a person is coming to repose among nd requests they will own him as a friend ative. This being performed, the gates burying ground are opened, and the is deposited in the earth. During the latter

latter part of this ceremony, the peopl
are busied in killing and dividing t
which the surviving friends and relati
deceased had provided for their ente
No particular dress is made use of in
for the dead; but on such melancholy
they shave the head.

In this island are umosses, or magic
pretend to penetrate and understand th
cret powers of nature, and, as may be
to procure the assistance of familiar a
natural beings; and who make a kin
manic composition, which is carried at
of the army to ensure victory and succe
impostors have obtained such credit ar
tion among the people, by their preten
and incantation, that implicit obedien
to their injunctions; and no act of ir
is undertaken without first consulting
nion. And though events do not alw
respond to their predictions, they are
less to find some plausible and satisfa
son to account for their failure; an
conjectures will sometimes necessaril
and right. a very few instances of this k
to [illegible] their future and permanent re
In sacred and religious acts and ce
however, these magicians never inter
in [illegible], every individual considers him
[illegible] to reject the general for
[illegible], and relies to his own disposi
[illegible].

[illegible] was first discovered by
[illegible], but they never atte
[illegible]. In 1841, the French usu
[illegible] of this island, and erected a

ous situation, which they denominated
hin; but the natives having conceived
version towards their new neighbours,
provoked by their tyrannical and ar-
oceedings, expelled them soon after;
that period no European nation has
pted a similar establishment.

Isles. Between the northern point
scar and the coast of Africa are si-
Comora Isles, which are placed be-
nd 46 degrees of east longitude, and
degrees of south latitude. Their num-
: Johanna, Comora, Mayotta, Mo-
Angazeja. Of these, Johanna, the
is about thirty miles long and fifteen
l abounds with all kinds of provisions
al fruits. At this island the East In-
usually touch for refreshments, and
an hospitality and kindness from the
dom experienced on the continent of
They are negroes, profess the Mahome-
n, and are remarkable for their affabi-
oliteness, especially towards the Eng-
whom they express a particular friend-
ccount of the assistance rendered them
ars with the natives of the neighbour-
ls, and the confidence they repose in
terested views of visiting them. Most
abitants are tall, robust, and well pro-
; they have piercing eyes, long and
and their complexions are between an
black colour. They are, in general, a
ple, inoffensive people, devoid of ambi-
entirely ignorant of the arts of war.
mmonalty wear coarse wrappers round
, and skull caps; but the more elevated
rank

rank have wide-sleeved shirts, which
over a pair of drawers, and waistco
modated to the season. Persons of c
may also be distinguished by the na
fingers and toes, which are suffered tc
immoderate length, and are tinged v
of a yellowish red colour, extracted fr
that grows in the marshy parts of
They have sashes that encircle their
in which they usually carry large kni
ards; but only persons of superior
turbans. The women adorn them
rings and bracelets of different metals
dilate the lobes of their ears to a grea
means of these weighty and favo
ments, which is considered as a mark
dinary beauty. For physical reas
than from the heat of the climate,
both sexes are accustomed to go nake
be seven or eight years of age; as th
that the free access of air to every
body is conducive to health, stre
growth; and that it prevents those d
which swathing is apt to occasion.

The island is productive of rice, y
toes, tamarinds, oranges, lemons, p
cocoa-nuts, honey, black cattle, and

abique, put to sea in an open boat, and
ntally reached Johanna. Being favour-
eceived, and joined soon after by some of
ntrymen, he formed the resolution of en-
uring to raise himself to the sovereignty,
without violence or usurpation, and
by means of superior abilities and ad-
was speedily effected, His knowledge was
useful to the ignorant natives, and ren-
him greatly respected; and having secured
our of the majority of the people, and
shed himself on the throne by their united
oluntary concurrence, he found means to
me all opposition. After a long and happy
gn, he left the kingdom to his son, in whose
it has since remained.

en any European ship arrives at the island,
ig usually goes on board; as no trade can
ned with the people till the royal licence
ined; for procuring which they generally

...ated in six
...tes west longitude, and sixte
latitude, being one thousand tw
west of the continent of Africa,
sand eight hundred east of S
The island is a rock about twen
circumference, very high and very
accessible at the landing place, in
at the east side of it, which is de
teries of guns planted level with th
as the waves are perpetually da
shore, it is generally difficult landi
There is no other anchorage abou
but at Chapel Valley Bay; and as
ways blows from the south-east, if
shoots the island ever so little, she c
ver it again.

The English plantations here affo
and yams, with figs, plantains, banan
kidney-beans, and Indian-corn; of the
ever, most part is devoured by rats,
bour in the rocks, and cannot be des
that the flour they use is almost
ported from England; and in times
they generally eat yams and potatoes
bread. Though the island appears on
a hard barren rock, yet it is agreeably
with hills and plains, adorned with
of fruit trees and garden stuff. They
plenty of hogs, bullocks, poultry, du
and turkies, with which they supply t

xchange, shirts, drawers, or any light
ces of calico, silks, muslin, arrack,

na is said to have been first discovered
uguese on the festival of the empress,
other of the emperor Constantine the
se name it still bears. It does not ap-
he Portuguese ever planted a colony
the English East India company took
of it in 1600, and held it without in-
till the year 1673, when the Dutch took
ize. However, the English, under
nd of captain Munden, recovered it
in the space of a year, and at the same
hree Dutch East India ships that lay
. There are about two hundred fa-
he island, most of them descended
lish parents. The East India ships
ter and fresh provisions here in their
; but the island is so small, and the
uch against them outward bound, that
ery seldom reach it.

npany's affairs are here managed by
r, deputy-governor, and store-keeper,
standing salaries allowed by the com-
ies a public table well furnished, to
commanders, masters of ships, and
assengers, have a general invitation.

ON. Passing St. Helena we come to
f Ascension, which is situated in eight
south latitude, and seventeen degrees
utes of west longitude, from London.
guese discovered it on Ascension-day,
his circumstance the island received
tion. It is about ten leagues in cir-
; and in general is sandy, dry, and

 barren,

whose flesh is not inferior to mutton fc
ness and delicacy; but the vast numbe
tles, which the coast affords, principall
mariners to touch at this place. In the
of a rock is a spot denominated the po
where ships leave letters corked up in
which is broken by the next comer, an
placed in their stead. On account of
of water, this island has never been colo

St. Matthew. The island of St. I
is situated in one degree forty minutes
latitude, and in nine degrees twelve m
west longitude, from London, and ne
hundred leagues to the north-east of A
It is about eight leagues in circumfere
very barren, but watered by a river of c
fresh water, which divides itself into
streams. This island was also first disco
the Portuguese, who, after settling a colc
and maintaining the possession for sever

s occasion frequent rain. It abounds with
n corn, rice, oranges, citrons, lemons, co-
its, and other fruits common to tropical
es. There are also great plenty of oxen,
sheep, goats, pigeons, and poultry; and
vers are well stocked with fish. The
e is wholesome, and the air clear and se-
luring the greatest part of the year. The
ngs are principally huts constructed of
; and in the whole island there is not a
house built of stone. This place is chiefly
le on account of its convenient harbour,
ch ships may ride with the greatest safety.
overnor of Anaboa is a Portuguese, who
ew Europeans in his service; but the ge-
y of its inhabitants are of negro extraction;
pay him an implicit obedience, and are
ely bigotted in their attachment to the
n catholic persuasion.

THOMAS. The island of St. Thomas, the
al possession of the Portuguese on this
is of a circular form, being one hundred
venty miles round, and is situated exactly
the equator, about forty-five leagues from
ntinent of Africa. The air is moist, and
olesome to Europeans, few of whom ever
at the age of fifty. Dead bodies putrify
mmediately, and they are under the neces-
burying them the moment that life be-
extinct. St. Thomas abounds with wood
ater, and towards the centre of the island
nto a mountain of such a height, that its
it is generally enveloped with clouds. The
excellent and fertile, and produces Indian
ice, fruits, sugar, and cinnamon, with little
ation. The principal town in the island is

gree thirty minutes of north latitude, is e
mountainous and woody. Its produc
rice, Indian corn, with a variety of fi
roots common to tropical climates; be
gar-canes, with which it greatly abound
cattle, hogs, and goats, are numerous in
tion to its extent; and the rivers and ne
ing sea abound with a variety of fish.
island exists a species of monkey, whi
only mischievous but destructive. T
bitants go naked, except their women a
The former adorn their head with a c
flowers; suspend a cross from their ne
like the Amazons, carry a cimeter in the

FERNANDO PO. This island, which i
ten leagues from the African continent,
in three degrees and forty minutes of n
tude, is thirty miles long and twenty bi
productions and inhabitants correspo
great measure, with those last descri

iguese have remained in the quiet and
ed sovereignty of these islands.

APE VERD ISLANDS. These islands ob-
eir denomination from an opposite Cape
frican coast, which projects into the sea
the rivers Gambia and Senegal, and is
pe Verd. Their distance from the con-
ore hundred and twenty leagues; and
situated between twenty-three and
x degrees of west longitude, and be-
urteen and eighteen degrees of north

It is affirmed that these islands were
to the moderns till the year 1460,
thony Noel, a native of the state of
the Portuguese service, first discover-

They amount to near twenty in num-
of which, however, are only sterile
inworthy of notice. The most con-
were peopled by the Portuguese;
is in general hot, and, in some of

goats, hogs, civet-cats, and a
ful species of green monkie
The surrounding sea furnish
variety of excellent fish; and
East India ships generally t
water and provisions. Ribe
capital of the island, the seat
a bishop's see, containing a c
built monastery, the gardens
admired. The other towns
are St. Jago, St. Domingo, St
and Praya; the last of whic
lent harbour, defended by a
summit of a hill.

Brava is in fourteen degre
about four leagues in circum
pally consists of high moun
the form of a pyramid. It h
bour, and is, therefore, muc
Dutch and Portuguese ves
East Indies. The productio
saltpetre, Indian corn, with
common to tropical climate
larly eminent for its wines.

The island of Fuego, tak
dreadful volcano, situated i
sometimes emits rocks of a p
amazing and incredible heig
more tremendous than the lo
sometimes torrents of flaming
the sides of the mountain, a
wards collected in great qu
extremely scarce: nevertheless
vast quantities of fruits a
island is well stocked with

iefly negroes, who manufacture cotton
are famous for breeding mules, of
dispose to Europeans.

s of an oval form, seven leagues in
nce, and derived its name from being
on May-day. In this island immense
of salt are made from the sea, crys-
the heat of the sun, which is only
ring the dry season, contrary to the
of crystalizing performed in the West
This commodity furnishes a very con-
rade to the English, which costs only
o the negro governor, who is generally
board every ship that arrives for this
Though the soil is dry and parched,
s corn and provisions sufficient for the
on of the inhabitants; and feeds a
ber of asses, with which the English
freight whole ships, and carry them
loes, and other British islands. The
ng sea furnishes a plentiful supply of
ially of doradoes.

ISTA was first discovered by the Portu-
l obtained its appellation from the beau-
pect it affords towards the sea. It is
iles long and twelve broad; and pro-
mense quantites of indigo, and more
n all the rest of the Cape Verd islands.
ountrymen carry on a considerable traf-
he nations of Bonavista, the English
is not only understood, but also spoken
habitants of this island. A curiosity
e, which is likewise to be found in some
ner islands: this is a kind of vegetable
remely perous, and of a greyish co-
lour;

lour; which, protruding stems, forms in shape resembling the head of a cat

The isle of SAL obtained its appell the vast and incredible quantities of sal produced from the sea-water. The ciency of fresh water has occasioned come a desolate and desert island.

ST. NICHOLAS is the largest of the islands, excepting St. Jago. The land high, and the soil produces maize in g dance, most tropical fruits, and a trees, particularly the dragon-tree, fr exudes the drug called gum-dragon. tives are ingenious and industrious, a themselves in manufacturing cotton cl forming it into dresses for the Guinea t capital is St. Nicholas, which is the pact and populous of any town on the though the best and most superb bui covered and thatched with grass.

ST. JOHN'S ISLAND, which is very mountainous, abounds with wood and ter, and produces large quantities of various fruits and roots common to climates, and plenty of fowls and cat natives are represented as a simple, in and hospitable race of people, who we

e who, through age or infirmity, are
pursuing the sport. Besides this
overnor is also the only magistrate,
in all matters. If any one is so stub-
refuse complying with the decisions of
r, he is confined till such time as he
er to submit to his decrees. It is
capital offences are perpetrated; but
e of that nature happens to be com-
noxious person is imprisoned till the
, and a bond be obtained from the
the offending person, that he shall
pearance at a public tribunal, when-
e shall arrive from Portugal to ad-
tice.

NT is inhabited by no human beings;
ntly visited by mariners, on account
ent bay, in which ships may ride
and where wild goats and turtles,
ecessaries, may easily be procured.

IONY is chiefly distinguished by its
uation, and contains a mountain
ought to equal, if not exceed, the
neriffe in height; and its summit,
nstantly covered with snow, notwith-
clearness and serenity of the sky, is
veloped in clouds. Several pleasant
ter the ground, and diffuse plenty
the island: the soil produces maize,
nons, limes, bananas, plantains, pom-
as, musk, and water-lemons, in great
besides a vast variety of trees and
he general character of the natives is
e inoffensive and humane; and they
d to amount to near three thousand
ee-fourths of which are slaves; who,
after

after the manner of the free
sessed of wives, houses, and p
governed by a steward, appoi
guese nobleman, to whom the

CANARIES. The Canaries,
Fortunate or Happy Islands of
to seven in number, and are
27 degrees 30 minutes, and 2
nutes, of north latitude; an
grees, and 17 degrees 50 mi
tude from London. The Ca
in the height of their power a
cried and colonized these isla
Romans had conquered and
state, the navigation to the we
stopped, and the Canaries wer
rity and forgotten, till they we
the Spaniards in the year 14
still belong. On their arriva
the natives resembled the Afr
tinent, in their stature and
that their language was total
their customs and manners in
sponded with those of their ar
or of their continental neighb
greatly ignorant of the arts,
the sciences; and being told
other countries in the world l
they expressed much wonder.

In GRAND CANARY, the in
tants is said to have [illegible]
sand; and in [illegible]
The Spaniards called [illegible]
human race of people; but it
that their ferocity to their c
maltreated them, and over wh

long time lost among them. Their
ons of annoyance and defence con-
nces pointed with horn, or hardened

Polygamy was not only permitted,
ginity of every bride was considered as
y of the chief; and both the husband
hought it a mark of distinction and
en he condescended to claim his right.
a new prince ascended the throne, a
nber of young persons, of both sexes,
hemselves in honour of him, and to
reign prosperous and happy; and as
or their loyalty and disinterested con-
ionarch considered himself bound to
possible kindness and favour on the
hese infatuated victims. The Guan-
ctive and lively, naturally bold and
nd so nimble, that with the assist-
ole they will leap from one rock to
ough at a considerable distance, with

extracted that is distinguished by C
of which the greatest part is exporte
land, where the annual consumption c
wards of ten thousand hogsheads. Th
are also abundant in cattle and var
animals, and are particularly famous
beautiful and pleasing birds of song v
the name of the islands.

PALMA is the most western and fa
tant from the continent of Africa of
Canaries, and is twenty-four miles
eighteen broad. In this island is a
spacious mountain, called Le Calde
Cauldron, from a hollow in its sum
gradually declining occupies a space
thirty acres, and from which seve
issue, that, passing through an aper
mountain, unite at the bottom, and
use of in turning sugar-mills. The
istence of several volcanos in differe
the island is apparent, and the chai

nto the sea, about a mile north of the town
nta Cruz. This island produces more
sugars, and wines, than the inhabitants
ssibly consume. Santa Cruz is the best
gest town in Palma, and is situated on
uth-east side of the island. It contains
neat and elegant structures, and has a
dious haven, in which vessels may ride
from every wind.

o, from whence the French geographers
y computed their longitude, as the Dutch
irs from Teneriffe, is fifteen leagues
nference. For above a league from the
as a steep ascent, beyond which the land
ably level and fruitful, abounds with a
of trees and shrubs, and produces pas-
and flowers in greater luxuriance than
the sister islands. As there is neither
well, nor river in the island, Providence
plied that want by providing the inha-
with the leaves of a tree, resembling an
nich grows on the summit of the ascent,
m which they distill a quantity of water
at to supply every living creature in

The branches of this wonderful tree are
nd extended. Every morning a cloud
om the sea, which being driven by the
the summit of the cliff, by degrees set-
the tree, from the leaves and branches of
he water flows down into a large stone
ir to the quantity of twenty hogsheads.
ngular phenomenon is attested by tra-
who affirm that they were eye-witnesses
fact, and is only contradicted by one,
is said, is no farther a philosopher than
is sceptical and incredulous. The na-

heaven, yet they descended to earth
the prayers and petitions of their
and then returned to their celestial al

Gomera is a small but fertile i
produces sugar canes and wines.
very common, and more numerous h
any of the sister isles; and there are
deer, which were originally imported
bary. The heroes of this island wer
immortal, and their martial achiev
still celebrated in rude and inharmoni
A singular custom of admitting a
of women prevails in Gomera; a
every man has a wife of his own, i
considered as uncivil not to lend the
who request it. And hence it is, that
son always inherits. The principal
island is denominated La Villa de
the town of Palms, from the great
palm-trees growing in the neighbou
this town are a church, a convent of

lve leagues in extent. The peak con-
st rocks, piled on one another, and is
the effects of subterraneous eruptions
nt concussions of nature; and this
still continues at times to emit such
quantities of burning sulphur and
, that the richest and most cultivated
hereby converted into barren deserts.
mmit of the peak is continual snow;
subtile, cold, and piercing; and the
who has the curiosity to make the at-
eaching the top, feels a palpitation at
which is accompanied with a difficulty
ıg. Before he has reached one half of
, the clouds appear below him, and
surrounding country resembles a vast
nded ocean.

ital of this island is Santa Cruz, which
near the shore, and has an excellent
odious harbour. The town is large
ous, and contains several superb and
ructures. In 1704 happened a very
arthquake in this island, and no less
y-nine concussions were experienced
e of three hours. On the 31st of De-
ıe earth opened, and two volcanos
ed, which emitted such a quantity of
o raise two considerable mountains.
ı of January following, the scene be-
more dreadful and alarming; the sun
obscured by the clouds and flames;
ıole surrounding country, to the dis-
ine miles, exhibited an universal de-
evouring fire. The violence of the
creased, the island was shaken to its
the wretched inhabitants every where

speak their own language, which resi
of the Moors of Barbary. They ac
a Supreme Being, whom they consi
compassionate, and merciful. They
to whom they swore fidelity, and wh
were caves and rocks, formed by na
are still distinguished by the name
caverns.

GRAND CANARY is a most delight
tile island, possessed of a happy tem
air, and abounding with delicious f
and salubrious streams; insomuch th
point of view, it merits the appella
Fortunate Island. In the interior p
several mountains of great height, v
the prospect; and it abounds with
rious kinds, of which the pine, palm
poplar, laurel, dragon-tree, lignum
dian fig, and many others, grow spo
Its fruits are oranges, lemons, citron

t a place of no great strength, is large opulous, and contains many superb and t buildings, public as well as private. At listance is a safe and commodious har- which is secure against every wind, ex- ie south-east, which seldom blows with olence as to endanger vessels.

TUVENTURA is about eighty miles long, a medium about fifteen broad. The soil neral fertile in corn, roots, and fruits; island is beautifully diversified with hills lies, and well watered and supplied with

It has several bays and harbours; but ea sometimes rises upwards of sixty feet it, the strongest vessels are in danger of ashed to pieces by the force and vio- f the waves. In this island are three he capital of which contains a church, a , and about one hundred and fifty houses. s also a number of villages, scattered out the island, which are populous, and bitants of which enjoy an uninterrupted health to a very advanced period.

ast island of the Canaries, of which we e a description, is LANCERATA, which is niles in length, and ten in breadth, and tance appears high, black, rocky, and

It is divided by a ridge of mountains, ford only pasturage for cattle, but the re fertile and pleasant, and the air is d wholesome. It abounds with grain, eat cattle, camels, and asses. On the nich encircle the coast grows the or- eed, an ingredient used in dying purple, believed to be the getulian colour of ents. About seventy years since ap-

nothing worth describing.

MADEIRAS. These islands are t
ber, and according to several write
discovered in 1344, by an Englis
name of Ovington; but the Por
took possession of them in 1431
found them uninhabited and covere
which being cut down and burned,
rendered abundantly fertile, and h
so ever since.

MADEIRA, which is the larger i
hundred and eighty miles in circun
possesses a most delightful climate
petual spring. It is composed of o
hill, that extends from east to west,
ern declivity of which are vineya
seats of the richest merchants. Mac
with wine, corn, oil, sugar, and fru
are perpetually in blossom; and th
well watered and fertilized by s

vidence as a refreshment to the inhabitants
e torrid zone. There are several sorts of
: wines, and it is computed that at least
ty thousand hogsheads are annually ex-
d to other countries. The wine of this
l not only endures a warm climate, but
improves by being exposed to the rays and
t the sun. The most considerable town
chiale, which is fortified with a castle and
y of cannon. The inhabitants of this
re the descendants of English and French
n Catholics, and native Portuguese. The
are exceedingly rich; and the essentials
gion are very little observed.

TO SANTO, the other Madeira island, lies
'e to the kingdom of Morocco, and,
extremely fertile and productive, is only
ten miles in circumference. The Portu-
[illegible]

pean islands; as they are situated at nearly equal distance from those several parts of world: they lie in the Atlantic Ocean, betw twenty-five and thirty-two degrees of west gitude, and between thirty-seven and forty grees of north latitude. They were first di vered by a merchant of Bruges in Flan who, sailing to Lisbon, was accidentally dr upon them by a storm, and gave them the pellation of the Flemish islands. Boasting, l ever, of his discoveries, on his arrival at Lis the Portuguese immediately sent a fleet of s to take possession of them; and great num of hawks and falcons having been observe their approach to these islands, they rece the name which they have at present, tho they are sometimes called the Western I-la The sky here is clear and serene, and the temperate and salubrious; but violent ea quakes and inundations of the sea are frequ and from both these causes the inhabitants st considerably. They abound, however, with c wine, and a variety of fruits, cattle, fish, fowl.

ST. MICHAEL, the largest of the Azore almost one hundred miles in circumference, contains one city, five towns, twenty-two villa and upwards of fifty thousand inhabitants. island is luxuriantly fertile, and carries on a c siderable commerce in corn, wine, and ca

castles, nor fortifications,
fence. The interior part
populous, and well culti-
the necessaries and con-
great abundance. What
ntion is the establishment
ture, in which china-ware
nd which constitutes the
mmerce in this island.

St. Mary is surrounded
and a cloud, which covers
ighest mountain in this
e approach of a storm.
nd foreteller of the tem-
murmuring noise is heard
em uneasy and terrified,
some places of conceal-
ie sea becomes agitated,
liately abandon this dan-
ould avoid being dashed

thirteen miles long and
ous and commodious ha-
it is the most important
Azores. This island is
nd is strongly defended
t. It produces wheat and
e for cattle, and a great
nges, and all those fruits
and European climates.
etropolis of Tercera, and
he residence of the gover-
ishop, who is the suffra-
t of the patriarch of Lis-
strong and populous, and
ious streets, a cathedral,
five

forms a commodious harbour called Can
defended by a fort and battery.

The island of St. George is chiefly
guished for its lofty and valuable ceda
which the natives carry on a considerabl
It is in some parts rocky and mountainou
in others, well cultivated, and populou
contains three towns and four villages
capital is denominated Villa de Velas, a
small and inconsiderable place, with o
church and one convent, but possesses the
tage of a port.

The island of Pico obtained its name
lofty mountain, terminating like that of
riffe, in a peak, and said by some autho
nearly equal to it in height. This islan
be seen at a great distance, and is sixtee
in length and five in breadth. Its prod

by a castle and batteries. In the Elizabeth, the English, under the e earls of Cumberland and Essex, l a squadron of ships richly laden, e harbour, made themselves mas- d, and destroyed its fortifications.

f FLORES is tolerably large, and led Santa Cruz. It abounds with sturage, and other necessary and ons. The inhabitants live to a the island is populous.'

st of the Azores, lies opposite to rived its name from the great s with which it abounded when The whole circumference of t more than three leagues, and pt two insignificant harbours, ve only vessels of small size, is rounded by a chain of rocks.

like the Madeiras, are wholly poisonous or obnoxious animals, f these creatures happens to be ir immediately destroys them. ortugal claims and receives the productions of these islands, and of tobacco raises a considerable s, however, are the chief produce nd twenty thousand pipes, or up- ally exported.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of Egypt.

IF the population of a country b
just criterion by which to estima
rity, how different, alas! is the pre
Egypt from its ancient greatness.
rishing days of Sesostris, it is stated
pulation of this country amounted
of seventeen millions of souls. I
however, of a few centuries, the s
conqueror, the destruction of civil
baneful oppression of tyranny, redu
habitants to half that number. But
had not arrived at that pitch of adv
it has since experienced: the caliphs
Mamelukes, were destined to increa
and complete its depression. It w
creants that impeded the progress,
ed the use, of science; that laid w
great and public utility, which hac
bour of ages; that obstructed or n
canals, aqueducts, and lakes, which
object the cultivation of the country
conclusion of the eighteenth centu
three millions of inhabitants could l
throughout the whole extent of Egy

This country is now divided into
Lower Egypt. Upper Egypt consi
valley, which begins at Syenna and e
Cairo. Two chains of mountains,
their rise from the eastern catara
vast contours of that country; and di

rse from south-east to north-west, till they h the latitude of Cairo, they then separate diverge to the right and left; the one tches to mount Colzoum, the other termi- s in banks of sand, near the city of Alexan- . Between these mountains the Nile flows, etween two insurmountable barriers. Some- es smooth and tranquil, it slowly and majes- lly pursues that course which nature and art e traced out for it; at other times rapid and etuous, reddened with the sands of Ethiopia, wells, and disdaining its former boundaries, ers the country with its waters for a space of hundred leagues. This valley is still as fer- as in the ancient and more prosperous days Thebes; but it is less cultivated, and its once owned cities are levelled with the ground, ile oppression, ignorance, and superstition, rping the throne of laws and of arts, keep m buried and in ruins.

Lower Egypt comprehends the whole of that antry situated between Cairo, the Mediterra- an, the isthmus of Suez, and Lybia. The tri- gular island called the Delta, which is included this part of Egypt, is the most fertile in the rld, and the glory of that country: its extent, wever, is greatly curtailed by the ravages of conquerors, who overthrew the eastern bul- ark of Egypt, and compelled the inhabitants seek peace and tranquillity in the interior rts of the Delta. The earth is no longer wa- red and cultivated with that care and attention lich distinguished the ancients, and being also posed to the ardour of a tropical sun, has en mostly converted into sandy and barren lains. Where formerly were seen rich lands

and flourishing towns, nothing is to be f present but a few mean and wretched h surrounded by date trees and deserts numerous canals which intersected th try are now chiefly filled up, and have v them only during the overflowings of t The seven branches by which this river f spread through the Delta, and emptied its the sea, are at present reduced to two, t Rosetta and Damietta; and one or two ca vigable only during a part of the year, only remains of the rest.

In the modern state of the country, h where agriculture is properly attended beauty and variety of the surrounding are still visible. The woods of palm-trees grow on both sides of the river, are pe pleasing to a traveller who enters Egy the sea. He is also not less astonished t lighted with the perpetual verdure and ance of the lemon, the orange, the bana peach, and other trees, common to the c The scene is pleasing on the western banl Nile, where Rosetta is situated, and from the river is seen covered with vessels. Th try in the Delta presents a prospect of mense surface, without mountain or hill, c with harvests almost continually; with and tufted sycamores, and cassia, orang lemon trees. In the neighbourhood of R the grand and picturesque ruins of Balb still exist. Farther eastward, is beheld a tic river covered with animation, the gra the spring, the beauty of summer, and th luxuriance of harvest. Beyond the Delt Nile branches into two divisions, and th

py

ls appear in view; and whilst in one di-
ire seen sterile plains and barren deserts,
ier the eye is relieved with cultivated
id pleasing scenery.

ascending the Said, or Upper Egypt,
y still more striking arrests the atten-
n November, when the Nile gradually
to his wonted course, the infant har-
ion appear in the land which he has
ied; in one part they are sowing melons
umbers; in another they are ploughing
n, and furrowing the surface of the soil;
third, we may see the corn and the
or millet) clothing the fields with ver-
The pyramids burst on the sight, and
e barren and sandy plains terrify the
, those lofty structures which equal the
ns' height, fill him with astonishment
. Next appears the fertile province of
, which excited the praises and the ad-
of Strabo; and though eighteen centu-
e elapsed since that traveller visited this
, it is still superior to any other part of
and greatly resembles the description
has given of it. In Fayoum, the olive
vine are still cultivated, and corn, bar-
doura, form the regular crops in rota-
ring eight months in the year. The soil
s flax, sugar-canes, and vegetables in
iee, almost without culture; and groves
trees, in the number of which we may
he superb date, the banana, the fig, the
ind the pear tree, grow spontaneously
plains. In this province, the rose-tree
considerable and valuable article of com-
They are collected together in clusters,

good cultivation. In proportion, hc
the proximity of these mountains, the
the river is attended to or neglected
foot of these barren rocks villages a
in their neighbourhood only does
flourish. Approaching mount Kalel,
seen but vast plains of barren sand.
this hill, the same dreary and unc
prospect presents itself. The natu
here find abundance of curious mate
tract and employ his attention. Ra
known plants, different species of
insects, minerals of various kinds, v
tains of granite and marble, and sev
of stone, are to be found within a fe
of each side of the Nile, as far as S
rived near the middle of the Said, a
objects obtrude upon the sight. Th
of Benisouf are lost in the horizon; in
villages appear in view; and the date

ndependent Arabs, who do not attend husbandry, and seldom any thing is to but deserts, rocks, and rugged moun-

ng the hills on the west, Egyptian Ly-ars in full view, over whose extent very dure is to be seen. Its only inhabitants s, ostriches, and the wild animals of the and many towns, which were formerly and well built, have now totally dis-. The territory situated between the the Red Sea is little else than a sandy To Mr. Bruce, who travelled over this Egypt, it appeared replete with horror. velve miles distant from the Nile, is a mountains, of the most barren and spect. All the country till near Cosseir plain, bounded by hillocks of sand; it ate of trees, shrubs, and all kinds of t has no traces of any living creature; serpents and lizards, antelopes and os-he usual inhabitants of the most barren ry deserts, are not to be found here. It o water, either brackish or sweet; and ard the country as pestilential, for none to fly over it. "The sun," says Mr. was burning hot, and upon rubbing two ether, they took fire; a mark how near try was of being reduced to a general ation." In the neighbourhood of Cos-country is variegated with mountains of y and marble; with trees growing in t elegant confusion, from the sides of and from the chinks of the granite nd with vegetation partially interspers-he plains.

Let us descend from mount
approach the Red Sea. Its shor
with innumerable shells, whose
and colour, alternately attract c
difficult to choose in such a va
plants cover the rocks; the water
corals, some white, and others
Join to these curious objects,
marbles of the mountains, the
they contain, the plants which g
torrents, the rare mints with whic
strewed, and it must be admitted
riches well deserve the attentio
list.*

Such are the general outlines
of this wonderful country, acc
writers and travellers who have
but as it is our duty to give our i
candour and impartiality, we s
count of M. Volney, who entert
on this subject widely different
tion. "As for the prospect of
offers little variety; nothing is
palm trees, single or in clumps,
fewer in proportion as you adv
villages of mud-walled huts, a
plain, which at different seasons
fresh water, a miry morass, a ve
dusty desert; and on every si
and foggy horizon, where the ey
disgusted: till at length, towa
of the two branches of the river,
of Grand Cairo are discovered
to the south-west three detached

* Savary's Travels.

ich, from their triangular form, are known to
the pyramids. We now enter a valley which
ns to the southward, between two ridges of
allel eminences. That to the east, which ex-
ds to the Red Sea, merits the name of a moun-
from the steepness of its ascent, and that of
esert from its native and savage aspect; but
western is nothing but a ridge of rock cover-
with sand, which has been very properly
ned a natural mound, or causeway.

To describe Egypt in two words, let the
der imagine, on one side, a narrow sea and
ks; on the other immense plains of sand; and
he middle, a river flowing through a valley
ne hundred and fifty leagues in length, and
n three to seven wide, which, at the dis-
ce of thirty leagues from the sea, separates
two arms, the branches of which wander
r a country, where they meet no obstacles,
l which is almost without declivity. If he
ires to himself a flat plain, intersected with
als, under water during three months, marshy
l rank with vegetation during three others,
l dusty and parched the remainder of the year:
e imagines a number of wretched mud-walled
l brick villages, naked and sun-burnt peasants,
faloes, camels, sycamore and date trees thinly
ttered, lakes, cultivated fields, and vacant
unds of considerable extent; and adds, be-
es, a sun darting his rays from an azure sky,
ost invariably free from clouds, and winds
stantly blowing, but not always with the
ne strength, he will have formed a tolerably
t idea of the natural aspect of this country.

'The face of nature, eternally the same, pre-
ts nothing but well-fed herbs, fertile fields, a
muddy

muddy river, a sea of fresh water, a
which, rising out of it, resemble island
the eye reach the horizon, we are
finding nothing but savage deserts,
wandering traveller, exhausted with f
thirst, shudders at the immense spac
parates him from the world. In v
plores heaven and earth: his cries,
boundless plain, are not even retur
echo; destitute of every thing, and
from mankind, he perishes in an ag
spair, amid a gloomy desert, withou
consolation of knowing that he has
sympathising tear. The contrast of
cholv scene, so near, has probably g
cultivated fields of Egypt all their ch
barrenness of the desert becomes a
plenty of the plains, watered by the
the aspect of the parched sands, so
productive, adds to the pleasures th
offers. These may have been more
in former times, and might revive un
fluence of a well regulated governme
present, the riches of nature produ
fruits which might be expected. In
travellers celebrate the gardens of R
of Cairo. The Turks are strangers
of gardening, so much cultivated l
nations, and despise every kind of a
Throughout the empire, their garde
wild orchards, in which trees are pl
out care or art, yet have not even the
pleasing irregularity. In vain may t
of their orange trees and cedars, whic
turally in the fields. Accustomed as
combine the ideas of opulence and c

ees, since with us they are necessarily
ed with them, we do not discover the de-

In Egypt, where they are frequent,
I may say, vulgar, they are associated
e misery of the huts they cover, and recal
e idea of poverty and desolation. In vain
describe the Turk softly reposing under
ade, and happy in smoking his pipe
reflection. Ignorance and folly, no
have their enjoyments, as well as wit and
; but, for my own part, I confess I
ever bring myself to envy the repose of
or to dignify insensibility with the name
ness."

government of Egypt appointed by the
n Porte, to which this province apper-
ough latterly it had nearly shaken off all
ice, is entirely military and despotic. It
of a divan, or council of regency, com-
f the pacha and the chiefs of seven mili-
rps. To the pacha it belongs to notify
hvan the orders of the Porte, to expedite
ure to Constantinople, to make suitable
tions for defending the country against
ies, and for counteracting the selfish
bitious views of internal parties. The
possesses the right and power of rejecting

themselves by impoverishing the p
greatly contributed to the depopulati
cay of Egypt. The pacha frequentl
his office with a large sum of mon
agreeing to pay to the Grand Sig
nuity, which is transmitted every y
stantinople, together with provisions
dress, spices, trinkets for the seraglio,
the sultans and the ministers, and s
the militia. The other emoluments
therefore, he is permitted to retain, wi
called to any account for their disbu

It is necessary, that the pacha shou
fortune in the space of three years, t
term of the duration of his power.
however, for continuing his office
time must be annually renewed by
Signior, for which he receives a valu
site; and the pacha, in order to indem
for these heavy expences, disposes of

cchat, however, is neither applied to its
l purpose, nor raised on lands or houses;
impost is laid on all merchandise im-
nto the country. The second tribute is
rage, and denotes any tax on land, or on
ons of Jews and Christians.
principal impost on land was a charge of
ackes on each foddan*, which, at the time
n Selim, estimating the cultivated lands
t at two millions one hundred thousand
ould raise a sum of six hundred and thirty
d pounds sterling. At present, however,
aly two thirds of that quantity of land is
ed, the beys, in order to make up the de-
, levy five or six patackes per foddan,
aises this branch of revenue to upwards
nillion and a quarter. But some districts
r Egypt are still in arrear.
difficult to form a just and correct idea of
is raised by the customs of the sea-ports,
ie internal commerce of Africa. A cara-
wever, that contains merchandise of the
f one hundred and fifteen thousand pounds
y a fine or tribute of seven thousand
idred pounds. The capitation tax on un-
s, which is generally denominated the
nounts to seventy-five thousand pounds.
t of the revenue consists of casualties; as
res, small imposts, and tolls on the Nile.
mber of the two latter amounts to about
undred and sixty. Of the revenue thus
about six thousand pounds should be an-
ent to Constantinople; but it is frequently

patacke may be rated at from three shillings to
lings and four-pence. The foddan is equivalent
.

retained

comply with his wishes and requ
Turkish militia are no where so i
haughty as in Egypt. This conduc
diery may have been occasioned by
and indulgence granted them by the
sometimes finds it necessary to empl
opposing the beys, and in levying t
By these means, the safety of the pe
only endangered by them, but foreign
Europeans as well as others, are subj
solence and oppression, which they
only by the payment of a sum of mo

The inhabitants of Egypt may be
four principal races of people, eac
origin is widely different. The Ara
the most numerous, may be subdivide
classes: First, the posterity of those
conquest of Egypt by Amrou, has
every part of Arabia to settle in a co
lebrated for its fertility and produ

ople are found in the Delta, but the
art inhabit the Said, or Upper Egypt,
y occupy whole villages. The Copts
scendants of those who were conquer-
Arabs; and who were a mixture of
Egyptians, Persians, Greeks, and Ro-
hey were among the first that embraced
an religion, which they still profess;
Eutychians, they abhor, and are ab-
, all other Christians. The Copts
en always acquainted with the interior
e country, have become the deposi-
the registers of the lands and tribes;
r the name of *writers*, are the inten-
aries, and collectors of the government.
ters are no less despised by the Turks
serve, than hated and detested by the
hom they oppress, and form a kind of
lass of the people.

rks are the third race of the inhabitants
and, at least nominally, are the mas-

Constantinople, or brought to Ca
merchants, on speculation. Wh
found insufficient, black slaves* fro
of Africa are substituted; and, ar
melukes, a few Austrians and Ru
found, who have abjured their reli
try for an establishment in a foreig
Mamelukes are hardy, capable of
tigue, of undaunted courage, and
in horsemanship and the use of the
horses are of the finest Arabian
dress is always of a military cast; :
rally go armed with a pair of pi
and a dagger. When on horseba
a pair of horse-pistols and a batt
Mameluke receives from his mast
arms, with a suit of clothes an
have no stipulated pay, but eat at
master, who always supplies the
money they want.

The arts which flourished so n
merly, are now in a state of total d
manner of performing the sepul
may still, however, discern amon
Egyptians a few traces of the cus
cautions of their wise forefathe
method of embalming they are
quainted; but the care they exhib
of the bodies of the dead, thou

* The condition of a slave in Egypt is the state of these wretched beings in both the is dissatisfied with his master, he to carry him to the market and offer him ther. He can also authorise any free pe him. The child of a female slave, if beg ter, is *ipso facto* free.

ıgmeent, the moderns make them agree-
ıd adorned with pompous inscriptions and
ıs, where the friends of the deceased, who
hither every Friday to repeat their me-
y adieus, may enjoy the coolness of the
ach sex, and also slaves, have their pe-
.inds of monuments. The sciences in
began to decay under the Mamelukes;
der the Turks they have become totally

ıughout all Egypt, there are only three or
ies in which the Turks keep any garrison.
he capital, and the residence of the pacha,
ere exhibits his grandeur and the beys
xury, is of an oval form, and covers an
of about three leagues. This city was
lly circumscribed with a wall, a few
nts of which only remain. The houses
built, and the streets are narrow, crooked,
rty. The inhabitants extend a slight
from one house to another, in order to

...ass will not fail to p
view. It is the centre of the tra
Sea with Alexandria and Rosetta.

Alexandria has nothing left
grandeur and magnificence. Ro
the most considerable and pleas
Egypt; and being the commerci
between Cairo and Alexandria,
motion, and abundance. Suez,
out the extremity of that line of c
tending from the bottom of the Re
ports of the Mediterranean, is but
and most unfavourably situated,
and sandy soil, and destitute of wa
visions. Owing, however, to its co
place is sufficiently well-provided.
leagues from the town a deep ditch
seen, which is supposed to be the co
of the canal projected more than
kings of Egypt and the Roman
order to form a ...

unimportant. Its inhabitants amount ighty thousand.
otic church consists of a patriarch, who to his office at Cairo, and resides at a, of which he is metropolitan; and ndred and forty bishops, his suffragans, Syria, Nubia, and Abyssinia. The otic clergy and laity are oppressed by nment, and labour under the greatest nd the most stubborn and deplorable . This church has all the hierarchical und in that of Rome. It has embraced ne of Eutychius, who taught that there one nature in Jesus Christ.* Several s and ceremonies have been also adopt- n, and they observe them with greater precision than the most essential parts n. Circumcision they consider as a the greatest necessity; and it is ex- persons of both sexes. Baptism is l on the males at the end of forty days, e females at that of eighty days, after h. In this they adhere to the ordi- Moses, which required that period of ne purification of the mothers, who must he ceremony. A celebrated doctor of sh church has proved, that they are odox in their faith, relative to the real and body of Christ in the sacrament. ctise confession; but instead of a pri- particular detail of their sins, nothing equired than a public and general accu- themselves; after which they are ab-

ius, the founder of this sect, was patriarch of

fuses. They are much addicted to fa
have a Lent which commences fort
before Easter, and another which b
three days before Christmas; beside
gils, on which abstinence also is
During these fasts, they eat neither
fowl, eggs, butter, nor oil; drink n
water; take only one meal daily, a
sun-set; and oblige their sick, and cl
have arrived at the age of ten years
the same regulations.

"These (the Greek monks) have bee
by Copts, or natives of Egypt, who
braced christianity, have seen arise a
some of those congregations to whic
agreed to give the epithet of religi
most of them are nothing but sinks of i
vice. Here barbarism and stupid
likewise took up their abode, perpe
memory of ancient anchorites, who

any aperture; for we cannot admit under
:ription a little gate, which is opened only
three times a year. People going in or
out are hoisted up or lowered down by
f a large rope and a pulley. The whole of
ce is constructed of soft calcareous stones,
of which contain fossil shells. Within
s there is a kind of small fortress, sur-
l with ditches, over which is a draw-
To this the monks retire, if the Arabs
e outer wall.

vice is performed in Arabic and in mo-
ptic, that is to say, in Greek Coptic,
eal Coptic, or the language of the Pha-
; no longer known to the present Copts.
pel is read in Arabic, that all may under-
: and though their prayers are still re-
n modern Coptic, which is intelligible to
the monks, none of these can speak it,
hem conversing in Arabic only. It is
ble, however, to give an idea of the con-
nat prevails in their services. When I
he convent it had twenty-three inhabi-
the whole. They all eat together in the
, one reading during the time of meal,
ar coarse as possible. The whole of their
nsists in bread, or rather biscuit, made

they receive whatever they want."*

The followers of the Greek chu
very numerous in Egypt, but the
it with less favour than the Coptic.
churches entertain a mortal hatred a
for each other, ever since the conque
by the Turks; and though the c
sionaries have endeavoured to ter
dissensions, and to reconcile both to
of Rome, their attempts have be
fruitless, and without effect.

The celebrated caravan of Mec
from Cairo, where a great multitude
assemble yearly from Turkey in Eu
and Africa. The object of this cara
merce, as well as devotion; and it
turns home laden with the richest
of Persia and India. The number
compose this cavalcade seldom amo
than forty thousand, and in times of
commerce is not obstructed is freque

ve hundred horsemen at his own expence, has the power of life and death during the ney. The caravan arrives at Mecca in the od of one hundred days; and the pilgrims are er the necessity of carrying provisions with n, to supply them on the road during that . The poor, however, are assisted by the The departure of the caravan from Cairo is wed by festivals and rejoicing. It is joined he road by several smaller ones, insomuch previously to its arrival at Mecca, it is times increased to double its original num-

We have already intimated, that though nly ostensible object of those who undertake journey is to offer up their devotions at the b of Mahomet, yet many accompany the rims, and join the caravan, for the sake of ying on their commerce with greater safety. se two different classes of people, however, chants as well as devotees, are, on their re-, honoured with the title of hadgi or pilgrim, ch serves as a proper name—Hadgi Maho-, Hadgi Mustapha,—and occasions them to reated with particular reverence and respect. s also the cause of their enjoying the first e at all public ceremonies, and of being al-st always exempted from corporeal punish-nt, which is as common in Africa as in a.

The plague frequently makes dreadful havoc Egypt. It appears every spring, and is most lent and destructive during the months of nuary, March, and April; but in May it ge-ally disappears. Various and contradictory ounts have been given of the causes of its stence and disappearance. It is, however, now

means of removing, that malady.
of its disappearing in May, or June
heat which then exists; but as
great profusion during the night
the superstitious inhabitants, Copt
Turks, consider the effect as the c
the first appearance of this dew p
is a messenger from heaven, and t
proverb is "St. John is come, a
plague!"

The disorders of the eyes appe
demical, and have been remarked e
days of Herodotus. It would a
gular and astonishing circumstance
pean, to see almost every fourth per
blind of one eye, or of both, or
an inflammation of them. Such,
the case; and so common is the
that the misfortune of the loss of sig
with the greatest apathy and unco
though this disease prevails to suc

s and numerous causes are assigned as
gin of this complaint, among which we
ckon the vapours exhaled from the stag-
aters; the nitrous quality of the soil; the
ration of a scorching sun from the earth;
tiferous south wind; and the burning
attered in the atmosphere.

ot having been freed from the power and
on of the Romans, in the reign of He-
became subject to the jurisdiction of the
of Bagdad, or the caliphs of Abassides.
uthority, however, in that coun- A. D.
inconsiderable, and of short du- 650.
The commanders of the troops in-
whom force and the right of war gave
as a token that they intended to keep
on of the kingdom only by the con-
the Abasside caliphs, caused the names
latter to be mentioned in the public
, which might be considered as a con-
and proof of subjection to their authority.
that time, however, there arose in Africa
caliphat under the name of the Fatemite;
th prince of which, named Moezz, having
l Egypt, transported thither all his trea-
nd even the ashes of his ancestors, in order
a that he never intended to return to his

always ineffectual and without s
magnificence of these new caliphs
extolled: it was suited to their va
immense riches; and they erect
grand and sumptuous palaces, di
mosques, and other public edifices
desirous of constructing new bu
of preserving the old, which migh
equally honourable and advantag
Their ministers and attendants we
and the furniture of their apartmer
or in the field, could not be surpa
ness. These princes not only shew
to the people during splendid ce
appeared daily in public, to hea
and to administer justice. After
Moezz, the ceremony of taking
the throne was performed with
pomp and splendor. The cava
consisted of all the grandees, office
pal subjects of the kingdom, proce
streets covered with rich carpets,
flowers and odoriferous plants, to
where they offered up prayers and
to the Almighty, and the caliphs
mage for their crown to the Su
This being performed, they were
the same pomp to the tomb of t
where they were reminded, in the
manner, of the brevity of human
every earthly possession is vain,
deceitful. This latter ceremony
and duly attended to, was calculat
to just ideas of the weakness
man: and was certainly equally in
the custom of burning flax before t

died at the age of eighty-five, after a
wenty-one years in Africa, and of forty
of which city he was the founder. He
have been a prince of singular justice
leration; and his virtues and exploits
n extolled by the celebrated Hani, a
rabic extraction, who, upon some dis-
r ill-treatment, retracted what he had
id in his praise, and bitterly satirised
oezz ordered his body to be interred
gnificent mosque at Cairo, which he
ed, and in which were deposited the re-
his predecessors. He had not that
f in the authenticity of his descent from
y Ali, with which he wished and en-
d to inspire others; but it was evidently
n to avoid all disputes, and every ex-
, on that doubtful subject. We are
being one day at the head of his troops,
was reviewing, he was accosted by a
ndividual, perhaps an Abasside in dis-
th a design of disconcerting him, and
what race and family he was descended.
interrogation Moezz readily, and with
n, replied, by pointing to the troops and
ord which he held in his hand, and say-
hese are my race and my genealogy."

was succeeded by his son Aziz, A. D.
ng only twenty-one years of age 957.
me of his accession, deputed the
nduct of the government to Jaafar,
r's experienced and favourite general.
ce married a christian woman; he had

He carried on many wars, in which
always successful; but he never
person at the head of his armies.
conqueror of Egypt, a second B
whom, after his succession to the ca
had for some time delegated the cor
vernment, on account of his bad fort
was disgraced and deprived of his
died in poverty. Notwithstanding
of his armies in Syria, Aziz was
fresh expedition against the Greek
suddenly died in the forty-third yea
after a reign of twenty-one yea
months. The Mussulmen in gene
him as a prince of an excellent dispo
justice, moderation, and affection for
but they also assert, that he too mu
the Christians and Jews, whom he
insult and oppress his Mahometan s

Aziz was succeeded in the caliph

This person began his enterprise by
loud among the zealous Mussulmen for a
tion of life and manners; and, by a more
dinary ostentation of sanctity, he in-
uch numbers of them to follow him, that
saw himself at the head of a consider-
d powerful army. He had made him-
ster of Upper Egypt, and defeated the
hich had been sent against him, before
, who had hitherto despised the insur-
id their contemptible leader, thought it
y to collect the best of his troops from
art of his dominions, and to attack the
vith a brave and numerous army. The
was for a long time obstinate and doubt-
t the insurgents were defeated, and their
was taken prisoner and put to death;
hich the revolt ceased, and tranquillity
tored.

em, at length, became quite insane, and
ut the most preposterous edicts. In par-
he entertained an extreme aversion for
, whom he not only prohibited from quit-
eir houses, but even, if possible, from
heir feet, by commanding that no shoes
be made for them. He also enjoined,
atever necessaries were brought for their
uld be reached in at the door half
, upon a fork or pallet; and the women
receive them unseen, with their hands
in the long sleeves of their garments.
, fancying himself a god, he commanded
should be worshipped as the great cre-
the universe. This decree justly alarmed
ous and faithful Mussulmen, who became
nsive that he intended to abolish Maho-

... his death, stabbed the assassins wi
hand. Thus fell this insane and im
reign, unregretted by the world, an
and detested by his own subjects.

Taher, his son, was only seven ye
when proclaimed caliph of Egypt a
and his aunt, during his minority, t
herself the regency of the two kingdo
obscurity of his reign has furnished his
nothing more respecting him worthy
than that he was a wise and prudent
lover of poetry, and a striking and pe
trast to his father.

Taher was succeeded in the caliph
son Monstanzer, a prince of extraordin
city and prudence, of great moderat
who, by his mild and humane govern
quired the esteem and affection of his
During his reign happened a most gri
A. D. mine throughout Egypt
1066 much

ostly furniture of his palaces and se-
A destructive pestilence, which immedi-
owed the famine, tended to complete
y of this unhappy kingdom; and its ca-
nd desolate condition encouraged Ha-
ke an invasion, at the head of a nume-
y of Turks. After besieging the caliph
ace, the merciless invaders plundered
waste all the parts of Lower Egypt,
ted the most horrid cruelties on the
inhabitants. Towards the end of his
onstanzer committed the care and go-
of Egypt to a favourite minister, and
ittle more than a nominal power. Hav-
e for poetry, he employed his time prin-
reading and composing some poetical
nd died in the 60th year of his reign.
rand-vizier espousing the interests of
the younger son of the late ca-
inst those of his brother, had the A. D. 1095.
o cause him to be proclaimed,
nowledged by all the grandees of the
d army, as the lawful successor to the

Nezar, the elder brother of Mostali,
i his friends, to Alexandria, where he
ired to counteract the designs of his
and to maintain his just title. The
zier, however, soon compelled Nezar to
r himself at discretion, whose life he
spared, but also procured him the for-
and reconciliation of the caliph. But
iency was of short duration, and had
ct on the temper and disposition of Ne-
, being detected in a second conspiracy
he government, was thrown into irons,
emned to be starved to death in a dun-

geon. The most remarkable event life of this caliph was the retaking Jerusalem from the Franks or cru the immense plunder which Afdal, l brought from thence. Monstali c eighth year of his reign.

His son and successor, Amer, tho time only five years of age, w ately after the death of his f claimed caliph, and invested v thority. The tender age of Amer enc uncle to attempt to dethrone him, a the caliphat. With that intention he Alexandria, which was then comm slave belonging to the grand-vizie means of promises and rewards, per to be proclaimed caliph in that ci who governed the kingdom during t of Amer, was no sooner apprised of than he marched an army to besieg of Alexandria, which in a little time and compelled the traitors to surrend tion. The grand-vizier returned in Cairo, and continued to conduct the a kingdom with such moderation and that he acquired the affection and es the Egyptians; and the caliph, by and during his regency, enjoyed a happy, and prosperous reign. Afdal was very ill rewarded for the services to Amer and to the state; being afte graced by the prince, and exposed ignominious treatment. Amer, we ar a cruel, proud dissembler; abando bauchery, addicted to gaming, and all religion. In other respects, he is

A. D. 1101.

aving been possessed of the art of govern-
, fond of the sciences, and a prince of no
onsiderable learning and abilities. He was,
length, assassinated by some mercenary
etches, whom the discontented grandees of
kingdom hired for that purpose.

The widow of Amer, whom he had left preg-
nt at his death, being delivered of a daughter,
fed, the grandson of Monstanzer, was A. D.
claimed and acknowledged lawful suc- 1126.
sor to the caliphat. This prince was
sooner seated on the throne, than he ap-
nted Barham to be his grand-vizier, a person
noble extraction, and of great merit and in-
rity. Under his government, the Christians
re very much favoured, and advanced to the
st considerable and lucrative places of the
ay and the state; insomuch that the jealousy
the Mussulmen was thereby excited, and a tu-
lt ensued. Redvan, the rival of the grand-
ier, marched to the gates of the palace, at the
id of a body of troops, who were armed with
ces to which copies of the Koran were af-
ed. Upon this Bahram removed with the
t of his Armenian soldiers into Upper Egypt;
finding his affairs in some measure despe-
e, he retired into a monastery, where he soon
er took the monkish habit. Redvan de-
oyed a great part of Cairo, and plundered the
ises and churches of the Christians, whom
compelled to wear a particular garb, as a
rk of distinction and reproach. In short, he
ed with such despotic and uncontroled au-
rity, that the caliph, who had hitherto been
ly a spectator of the causes and consequences
the civil war, ironically bestowed on him the
appellation

cerns of government. From that ti
without the assistance of a vizier;
tablished an equilibrium between th
and Mahometan religions, by emp
and upright men of both persuasion

But the contest which was begun u
by the aspirers to the office of vizier,
great detriment of the authority of
A. D. 1151. continued during the reign
and his successors; and ma
dered as a principal cause of
tion which was afterwards effected
Dhaser was murdered by Abbas, h
order, as it was pretended, to aven
rendered him by the caliph, but in
he might govern more arbitrarily in
Alsayez, the son of Dhaser, an ir
morning after the murder, Abbas
the palace of the caliph, and after
tended enquiries respecting Dhaser, a
of his brothers and some other relati

content of the people, occasioned by the
us conduct and tyranny of Abbas, soon
universal throughout the kingdom; and
er and his son privately conveyed them-
nd their wealth into Syria, attended by
rt of troops. The sister of the late ca-
wever, applied to the Franks, who were
time in possession of the city of Ascalon,
means of presents and promises engaged
o apprehend those murderers. Accord-
body of troops was sent to intercept
and a bloody and obstinate engagement
in which Abbas was slain and his son
risoner. Nasir was conducted to Cairo,
he expiated by his sufferings the crimes
es of his father and himself. His right
as crushed in a dreadful manner; the
is torn off his bones with hot pincers; and
condition he was fixed to a gibbet till he
id, when his body was burned to ashes.
z did not long survive the loss of his
and his accession to the caliphat, but died
eleventh year of his age. Under the two
liphs the crusaders were successful in

Alsayez succeeded Al Aded, his grand-
nd the eleventh and last caliph of

in punishing slaves; and signified to h
if he persisted in his complaint, he wo
upon himself greater injuries than thos
hitherto received. Shawer, fired with
ment at the haughty and oppressive c
Hazan and his uncle, retired with hi
and adherents towards Alexandria, wh
sembled a numerous and powerful
forces. He was also joined by vast nu
Arabs, who repaired to his standard fro
western parts of Egypt, and in a litt
saw himself at the head of an army of
sand horse. With these troops he ma
mediately into the lands and territori
vizier, which he ravaged and laid w
out opposition, and, advancing towar
threatened that city and the court wit
sword.

In this exigency of affairs the vizie
of nothing but saving himself and his
flight, and of conveying his immense
some place of security. The new calip
court, no less alarmed at the progress
cess of the one, than at the cowardly
minious flight of the other, were utterl
what course to pursue. To prevent,
all future dissension and disturbance,
appointed Shawer to the viziership, v
been abdicated by the fugitive Arzik.

...e viziership, raised a numerous body of
engaged and defeated Shawer in an ob-
and bloody battle, in which his son was
id himself obliged to leave the kingdom
eek his safety by flight. Shawer fled into
where he implored the protection and aid
oddin, emir of Damascus, to whom he
d one-third of the annual revenue of
if he would assist him with his whole
in recovering possession of his office and
. Nuroddin, whose grief and indigna-
re excited by the progress and success of
nks in that country, readily promised his
.

e mean time, Dargan, fearing that he
be abandoned, not only deprived those
of their employments whom he believed
the interests of his rival, but caused
them to be massacred, which weakened
dom considerably, and laid it open to
nvasion. But notwithstanding these
id cruel persecutions, Dargan fell a sa-
he power of Nuroddin, who sent a body
under the command of Asadoddin,
lish Shawer in the viziership. Shawer
was so far from perform-

course would have been obliged to surr
to perish with his whole army by famine
Nuroddin seasonably interposed in hi
The emir of Damascus, who had lately
some great advantages over the Franks
was no sooner apprised of his general's
and of the treachery and ingratitude of
than he entered into a treaty, by whi
tained the free release of Asadoddin, wl
diately departed from Egypt, withou
tion.*

Shawer, however, had still sufficient
dread the resentment and vengeance of
and virtuous Nuroddin, who having s
subdued the greatest part of Syria ar
potamia, had it in his power to inflic
merited punishment on the vizier for his
ful and perfidious conduct, and for th
which he had concluded with the crusa
cordingly we are told that, in a short

entered without opposition. Saladin, ew of Asadoddin, also accompanied s expedition, which was intended as pel the Franks out of that country, as the vizier. Shawer having received ients of troops from the crusaders, enenemy with the greatest bravery, and, iends and confederates, was totally de- This victory of the Syrians conduced uction of the valuable port of Alexanh Asadoddin soon after besieged, and self master of. Leaving the command y to his nephew Saladin, he marched towards Upper Egypt, but being inat the Franks had invested that place leparture, he returned with the design the siege. He was, however, preto subscribe a treaty, by which he again his conquests in Egypt, and consented aw his troops from that country, in tion of a stipulated sum of money to im, besides the expences of the expedicordingly, Alexandria was evacuated yrians, and Asadoddin led back his reatly weakened by sickness and fa-

ner were the Syrians retired, than the vizier concluded another treaty Franks, the main purport of as, that they should conjointly be territories of Nuroddin, who, as he at time employed in quelling an insurwhich had arisen in some part of his s, would be utterly unable to send any o Egypt. This treaty greatly alarmed perated the emir of Damascus, who, A. D. 1167.

determined to suspend for a time h
quests, and to employ the whole of
in the reduction of Egypt, and the
of the vizier. With this resolutio
powerful army the next year, whic
time besieged one of the strongest
that kingdom, but without effect
that Nuroddin, in order to obtain
this castle, was under the necessity
up the city of Sarif and its depend

In the mean time the Franks, wh
ously reduced Belbeis, or Pelusiu
made a considerable progress in
other kingdoms, by means of th
which existed among the Mahom
directed their march toward Cair
in the utmost confusion on account
nal divisions, and utterly incapabl
Shawer perceiving the error he ha
in concluding a treaty with the cr
used friend and foe alike, applied
in the most pressing manner, and i
that unless he would assist him wit
reinforcement of Syrian troops, E
inhabitants would certainly becom
sion of the Christians. This seaso
was extremely pleasing to the emir
who wished for nothing so much a
nity of conquering Egypt and
Franks.

Nuroddin, therefore, immediatel
an army of sixty thousand hors
command of Asadoddin, to endea
the siege of Cairo, which was thei
the Christians. The vizier, howev
ing of the approach of the Mahor

ng it impossible to hold out for any time against the besiegers, had again o treaties and promises, and by means ndred thousand dinars, and an agree- ay a much larger sum afterwards, pre- he Franks to retire.

ldin having arrived at that capital, ed with all the outward marks of ho- gratitude. The vizier, however, in- seize the persons of the general and w Saladin, at an entertainment in his e to which he had invited them. But as of Shawer being made known to n, he had him secured. When the s informed of the treachery and con- f the vizier, he dispatched one of his o the Syrian general to exculpate him- the suspicion of being privy to the l to request the traitor's head, which im on the point of a lance. The weak appointed Asadoddin grand-vizier, his public entry into the metropolis, the insignia of his new office and His administration, however, was of ation: he died two months after his n, in consequence of a debauch.

hew Saladin, who succeeded him in ship, is celebrated in history for his d victories. Many, however, of the and principal persons in the kingdom tly dissatisfied with his appointment to t office, and at first refused to receive s orders; but by his address and gene- soon conciliated the affections of the Saladin found it necessary to persuade , that notwithstanding the high degree

of power to which he had attained, the subject of the emir of Damascus roddin exacted that submission fron usually stiled him the general of h Egypt. This mutual harmony con increase the credit and authority whilst the power of the caliph becam

A. D. 1169. weaker. The Franks making on Damietta, besieged that pc time; and this circumstance b ed to Nuroddin, he caused a powerf to be made in their Syrian territories by compelled them to raise the seige, to the relief of their own conquests. of Damascus soon after commande acknowledge the Abaside caliph and to cause to be erased from the name of Al Aded. Saladin stroi strated with Nuroddin on the dang propriety of so great an innovatio standing which, the next year he re express orders from the emir on the he durst not disobey; and prayers we for the caliph of Bagdad in the Cairo. It is not known whether A alive when this change took place, l tain he did not long survive it. Hi followed by the total extinction of t caliphat, after it had subsisted in hundred and seventy-one years; seve were spent in Cairoan, and the rest

No sooner was Saladin informed

A. D. 1170. of Al Aded, than he took the palace, and of the immer contained in it; and ascendin of Egypt, became the founder of t

hich was so denominated from the
s father. Saladin, though now ar-
height of power and greatness, was
s under the necessity of acting with
mspection and prudence, both with
ie jealous Nuroddin and to the Egyp-
ietans, who being Fatemites, could
posed easily to acquiesce in such a
government. The emir of Damas-
er, who had been offended at the ne-
refusal of Saladin, to comply with
is commands, and was preparing a
rmament with full resolution of in-
ypt, died suddenly, to the great joy
and of the Egyptians.

who was now freed from the appre-
so powerful an enemy, assumed the
tan or sovereign of Egypt, and was
ed in that capacity. The zeal of the
however, for the Fatemite descen-
not entirely extinguished, and an in-
broke out against the new sultan,
headed by the governor of Upper
his revolt was followed by a desperate
t, in which great numbers of the in-
re slain, and the victorious general of
urned in triumph to Cairo. About
me also, the sultan obtained very con-
dvantages over the Christians, whilst
ed the city of Alexandria with a nu-
t and army, under the command of
e second, king of Sicily. He march-
ful body of troops against them with
, that the unexpected approach of his
sed a panic and surprize in the Chris-
; and William found himself under

the necessity of abandoning his camp with t greatest precipitation and confusion, and leaving his military engines, stores and bagg to the possession of the enemy. The year f lowing, he was still more successful; and h ing reduced the strong capital of Damascus, made himself master of several other consid able fortresses and cities in Syria.

Soon after, however, Saladin experienced reverse of fortune in that country, during whi period his Egyptian subjects were greatly alar ed at the sight of a powerful fleet and armame of the Christians, which appeared in the R Sea, and seemed to threaten the cities of Mec and Medina with instant destruction. The ne of this expedition no sooner reached the city Cairo, than the brother of Saladin, who h been appointed viceroy of Egypt, during the sence of the sultan, caused a fleet to be equipp and manned with all possible dispatch, the co mand of which he bestowed on his governor marine, called Lulu, who was a brave and perienced officer. This commander soon ca up with the enemy, and a dreadful battle imm diately ensued, in which both sides fought w the greatest obstinacy and bravery. The gagement, however, at length terminated in vour of the Mahometans, who sunk many of enemy's ships, made a terrible slaughter of Christians, and took a great number of pr ners, all of whom were immediately put to dea This contest proved extremely fatal to the Fra who never ventured a similar attempt, and Egyptian viceroy and admiral obtained immo tal praise among the Mahometans, not only their seasonable attack of the enemy, but e

barous and inhuman treatment of the who fell into their hands.

n of Saladin has been rendered fa- e history of Europe, principally by s, which supply the silence of the ecting his warlike exploits, and those ns of Egypt during that period. He imself of Nubia; and as he was the his own monarchy, so he left it in a ishing condition, than it ever after- ed under any of his successors.

t Damascus in the twenty- of his reign; and his death, A. D. 1193. ed the Mahometans with inexpressible ited real joy in the minds of Chris- om he had always been an irrecon- ny, and a dreadful scourge.

l, the eldest son of Saladin, who suc- father in the kingdom, was of a very aracter and temper, and possessed of which could inspire his subjects with or fear. He gave himself up entirely , and indulged in every kind of dis- d debauchery. This conduct ren- contemptible in the eyes of the people, oned that general defection, which t the beginning of his reign, in seve- f his dominions, and especially in l Aziz, his brother, a prince no less l debauched than Al Afdal, was no rned from assisting at the funeral of than he was surrounded by the gran- ypt, of which he was viceroy; who s ambitious and aspiring views, ex- , with one voice, to assert his right to by force, and to pay no submission or allegiance

together without encountering any for
dable opposition, they besieged the
of Damascus, of which they made
masters; and the unwarlike Al Afd
one brave or generous effort to retain
and kingdom, submitted himself to
mency and authority.

On the death of Al Aziz, his son
then only nine years of age, was appo
ed to succeed to the vacant throne;
accordingly, all the grandees of the k
dom took the oaths of allegiance to
sovereign; but insisted that his uncle
should be invited to assume the rei
vernment, during the minority of
prince. Al Afdal was in Syria when
of his brother's death, and of his be
to the regency of Egypt, was brough
immediately, therefore, departed for
on his arrival was received by the p

pation, a more dangerous design was in
n, of which neither he, nor the young
had the least suspicion. Al Adel, the
of Saladin, on whom that sultan had
d several provinces and governments in
Mesopotamia, and other countries, be-
th secret satisfaction his two nephews,
l and Al Aziz, weakening each other
r mutual wars and contentions; and
under the specious pretence of tender-
d affection, and a desire of reconciling
peace and amity, he had rendered as-
to both in invading each other's domi-
e, nevertheless, acted with the sole view
ng and securing their possessions to him-
some favourable juncture. He had al-
btained Damascus; and was making pre-
rs for the invasion of Egypt, with no less
than probability of success; whilst Al
wholly engrossed with his own designs,
prepared for opposing those of his uncle,
d him the opportunity which he had long
. Accordingly Al Adel led his army
ypt without opposition, and ap- A. D.
before the walls of Cairo, which 1199.
id defenceless, and in no condition
in a siege, obliged the city to surrender
pace of eight days. He then compelled
ent to sign a treaty in the name of Al-
, by which the kingdom of Egypt was
to Al Adel, and Al Afdal retired into
provinces awarded him by the conqueror.
del having thus secured to himself the
session of the kingdom, deemed it the
and most prudent method to govern
for some time in the name of Almansur,
and

and to act as regent during his m
der that the grandees of the nat
taken the oaths of allegiance t
prince, might not be induced to
surrection or opposition against hir
rosity and their gratitude, howev
vinced him, that he had nothing t
account, and that he might safely
hesitation assume the sovereignty
der to declare the lawfulness and
such a measure, and that it might
the eyes of the people as a duty c
convened an assembly of Mahom
who were induced, by gifts and
give a public sanction to his title
Egypt. After this award, Al
not to assume the appellation of
the people to acknowledge and ob
capacity.

During his reign, the emperor
Abyssinia sent ambassadors to th
Alexandria, requesting that he wo
them a new metropolitan, in the
late abuna deceased. The patriar
delaying to execute his commissio
sadors applied to the sultan, and b
would interpose his authority in
Al Adel having received the lette
of the Ethiopian monarch, and be
that a person proper for that hi
dignity was not to be found in
monasteries, made choice of the bi
for that purpose. Though this w
the rituals of the rigid Copts, he wa
to the office by the patriarch, an
Ethiopia by the king and peo

of reverence and respect. He
unctions in Abyssinia, for some
great satisfaction of the church and
iat country; but having at the re-
portunity and solicitations of the em-
secrated her brother bishop of Auxuma,
ig prelate assumed the authority of a
itan, and treated the abuna with the
disrespect and contempt. The empress's
moreover, carried his resentment so
send persons in the night to assassinate
consequence of which, the abuna, with
ficulty and danger, escaped out of that
, and arrived in Egypt. This conduct
byssinian court was intended to liberate
m the necessity of receiving their me-
n from the patriarchs of Alexandria;
id been frustrated by the strenuous op-
of those prelates, during the reigns of
mite caliphs; but the new sultan, by
ng his authority, occasioned those feuds
ensions, which afterwards ensued, in
s well as Abyssinia.

e addition of Egypt to his other terri-
ie dominions of Al Adel were become
ive, that he found it difficult to pre-
conquests and possessions. The A. D.
aking advantage of the absence 1209.
ltan, who was employed in sup-
an insurrection in Mesopotamia, landed
le a dreadful irruption on the coast of
a, which seemed to threaten the safety
iquillity of the whole kingdom. Find-
heir arrival in Egypt, that the country
itute of forces, and in a defenceless con-
dition,

dition, they besieged Damietta by sea
whilst another body of their army
almost as far as Cairo, and having
great outrages, carried off an immens
of plunder. Al Camel, one of the sul
who had been appointed governor of
dom during his father's absence, was
to retire and fortify himself in Cair
leave Damietta to its own defence. T
finding the capital in a state of resis
joined their other forces at Damietta
ing defeated in some fresh attempts
place, they went on ship board, and
Palestine.

Whilst the sultan was still in Mes
another embassy arrived from the e
Abyssinia, requesting Al Adel and
arch of Alexandria to send thither a
tropolitan, in the room of the late ab
had deserted them. To add greater
this embassy, rich and costly present
stowed on the sultan and the patriarc
sequence of which, an abuna was appo
consecrated, and dispatched to Abys
all convenient speed.

Al Adel was making preparations
expedition, when a new and formidabl
belonging to the Franks, appeared on
of Damietta, and besieging that plac
sea and land, spread an universal terro
stemation through the kingdom. Th
affected the sultan, harrassed with fa
suffering from the infirmities of age, t
into a lingering disorder of which he di
seventy-third year of his age, and the

reign in Egypt. He was succeeded by
n Al Camel, whom he had fre- A. D.
y appointed to govern the kingdom 1218.
his absence.

s prince, however, ascended the throne in
ropitious hour. By the death of Al Adel
nascus, his brother Al Moadhem seized all
asures and valuables in the palace, and
l the chiefs of that city and kingdom to
allegiance to him; whilst the treasury of
had been nearly exhausted, to supply
Syria, where the principal part of the
vas stationed. The Franks not only closely
ed Damietta, but also made frequent and
ul inroads into the country, and threatened
ital with fire and sword. These multi-
evils were likewise aggravated by the re-
nt and hatred of the Mussulmen towards
ristians settled amongst them, whom they
ıced as the cause and promoters of these
nt and cruel incursions from Europe and
ne. Such were the difficulties under which
mel laboured from the commencement of
gn, and which compelled him to adopt
res harsh and severe, and such as neither
ırage, nor sagacity, could enable him to

order to silence at once the loud complaints
Mahometans against the Christians, he
out an edict, by which the latter, clergy as
laity, were obliged to contribute towards
pport of the war, by rendering personal
uniary assistance. These exactions were
r on the Melchites, on account of their
hip with the Franks, and readiness to join
orces, whenever an opportunity offered.

numbers of the rich renou
and apostatized from Chri
might avoid those heavy im

In the mean time, the F
mietta with such vigour a
notwithstanding the strong
which that city had been i
render it an impregnable b
frequent incursions of the
strained to yield to the supe
of the Christians, and to sur
This circumstance greatl
Egyptians, and no less eleva
enemy, and both expected t
the whole kingdom would
this dilemma and distressful
applied to the emirs of Da
for assistance, and was so f
an alliance with those two
cover" of the places which

vourable opportunity of making
ters of Egppt.
s afterwards very successful, and
d considerable cities and pro-
, Palestine, and Mesopotamia,
the government of his Egyptian
is younger son Al Adel, whom
ceroy of the kingdom. He died
in the twenty-fifth year of his
twentieth of his age. He was
arrassed and tormented by the
els among his Christian sub-
ites and the Greeks, who occa-
turbance, by the opposition of
relations, or by the seditious
surrections of the emirs of his
his courage and prudence failed
im triumphant over all his ene-
literature and learning, he col-
im all the men of letters in his
versed with them on different
estowed on them marks of his
l esteem. His death was uni-
d by all his subjects.

younger of Al Camel's sons,
me time acted as viceroy
proclaimed successor to A. D. 1237.
hat kingdom, by the free
hoice of the emirs and people.
wever, his elder brother, who was
ens, settling the affairs of his
ns, entered into a treaty of par-
sahebs, or kings, of Abek and
ich he had Egypt assigned him.
erefore, a body of forces, he en-
gdom, amidst the acclamations
Egyptians, who had been most

forward in electing and swear
his brother Al Adel.

Nojmoddin was no sooner
throne of Egypt, than reflectin
and inconstancy of the grar
voured to give stability to his
means which depended not on
authority of the emirs. For th
creased the number of the Man
a body composed of Circassi
bonds, and banditti, without cc
relations, and who knew and
other master than him by whor
Saladin, the founder of the A
in order to suppress and overa
the Fatemites, formed the st
courageous of these slaves i
litia, to whom he entrusted
person, and the support of his
cessor followed his example
ventured not only to increase
to introduce them as guards
Cairo, and into other cities an
kingdom; by which means th
in subjection during the whole

In the mean time, whilst
ployed in securing to himsel
Egypt, he was no less impat
possession of his dominions in
ing, therefore, at the head of
tian forces, he attacked and d
of his competitor, assisted by
great number of Knights Ten
followed by the reduction of I
other cities of Syria. The I
greatly alarmed at the power

n sultan, made frequent and pressing
ons to the states of Europe to send them
ccours of men and money. Accord-
numerous body of troops arrived under
luct and command of Louis the Ninth,
France. The first attempt of this mo-
as to make himself master of the city
of Damietta, the garrison and fortifi-
f which were at that time in no state
ce. The surrender of this place proved,
xpected, an effectual and speedy expe-
r compelling the sultan to withdraw
rious forces from Syria, that he might
is dominions in Egypt. Nojmoddin
sooner apprised of these proceedings,
raised the siege of Emessa, which was
state of blockade, and marched with
ble haste to oppose the French monarch,
l the Franks out of the kingdom. He
wever, on the way thither, in the for-
ar of his age, and the ninth of his

lek, the third son of Nojmoddin, A.D.
t a distance from Egypt, was ac- 1249.
ged sultan through the policy of
ite concubine of his father, named Shajr-
ho was equally celebrated for her good
d courage as for her exquisite beauty.
convened an assembly of the emirs and
, she made them sensible how necessary
at a chief should be immediately ap-
when the French king was rapidly ad-
with his troops towards the capital of
dom. In the midst, therefore, of con-
d intrigues Al Malek was proclaimed.
oner was the newly elected sultan in-

formed of his appointment to the
he hastened into Egypt, where h
bled a numerous army, chiefly com
melukes, he marched to oppose
invading Franks. Louis, whom
and appearance of the sultan's
alarmed, thinking himself secure o
could only engage the enemy in
his forces across a branch of the l
vided the two hostile armies. T
measure inspired the Egyptians
and having attacked the Franks
lour, they totally defeated the C
and took many prisoners, in th
whom was Louis, their king an
A. D. 1250.

This victory, which ought to ha
Malek on the throne, was the ca
position. The numbers and succ
melukes rendered them insolent
and they wished to impose laws
relative to the ransom of the pri
pretensions he firmly resisted, a
prudent as to hint, that he intend
lution and dismissal of that ins
men. The emirs, who were the
Mamelukes, were informed that
proposing a treaty of peace and
the French monarch and other Ch
on condition that they would a
their excellent and well disciplined
ducing to subjugation the factio
lious corps. This being commun
soldiers by the chiefs, an alarm
diffused through the whole body
like, and the revolt became

prince, who went forth to appease the
, and quell the insurrection, was wounded
enoddin, one of the emirs. Al Malek,
re, sensible that his presence tended only
sperate the insurgents to a higher degree
, and to expose himself to danger, sought
in a wooden tower, erected on the banks
Nile. Thither the enraged soldiery pur-
im, and set fire to his retreat. The tower
soon in a blaze, the sultan jumped into
ver, and endeavoured to save his A.D.
f swimming, but was pierced by 1250.
rrows in the stream, and expired.
succession to the throne occasioned new
of riot and confusion. The insurgents
vested with supreme authority the artful
bine, who had procured the crown for Al
, and caused her to be acknowledged sul-
of Egypt; but being afterwards ashamed
themselves commanded by a woman and
e, they proclaimed Al Moez, one of their
pal emirs; and soon weary of his govern-
they deposed him, and felt some remorse
they had secluded the Aayabite family
their sovereignty and inheritance. They
ore made diligent search for and disco-
a prince of that race, who, being only six

came the founder of a new dynasty *. Th meluke sultans were afterwards destroy

A.D. 1517. Selim the Second, emperor of Con nople, who defeated and afterwards ed Toman Bey, the last of their p Selim was satisfied with abolising the me of the Mamelukes, and permitted their *cracy* to continue, on condition that the an annual tribute, were obedient in matt faith to the mufti of Constantinople, a serted the name of the Ottoman emperor prayers, and on the coin.

Syria, the usual appanage of Egypt withdrawn, that country has rarely int dled with foreign affairs; and during th eminence of the Ottoman power, it was the quietest and most submissive of th vinces. But since the Turkish dominatic peared on the decline, the Mamelukes ha creased, and become masters of all the and strength of the country. Ibrahim

A.D. 1746. was the first of the latter Mame who had the address to render h master of Egypt. The pacha bec mere phantom, and the commands of the vanished before him. At his death, his were divided among themselves, but con

A.D. 1766. to give the law to others. At l however, Ali Bey obtained a decid cendancy over his rivals, and re

* The first Mameluke sultan, by employing hi lent and seditious subjects in the invasion and con Syria, reigned seventeen years; but none besi verned so long. The sword, the bow-string, poiso la murder, or private assassination, was the fate of tyrants, forty seven of whom are recorded by nar

complete master of the country. From oment his boundless and insatiable ambi- as fully apparent. No longer satisfied he humble title of bey, he longed to as- he more honourable distinction of sultan ypt, and to throw off entirely the supre- f the emperor. With this view he ex- the pacha, refused the accustomed tri- nd coined money in his own name. He nded several vessels to be equipped at and manned with Mamelukes, which sailed dda, and seized on that port; whilst, at me time a body of cavalry entered and red the city of Mecca. The project of this expedition, was to render Gedda the ium of the Indian commerce, and to Europe to abandon the passage of the of Good Hope, and substitute the ancient of the Mediterranean and Red Sea.

determining to commence his conquests, presented itself as the first object, and thing seemed favourable to his views: the nan forces had sufficient employment in the an war; Shiek Daher in rebellion against orte, was a powerful and faithful ally; and xtortions of the pacha of Damascus dis- g many to revolt, a favourable opportunity fforded of invading his government. To nited arms of Ali and Shiek Daher, the s of Jaffa and Rama, and all Palestine, sur- red; and Damascus was on the point of g into their possession, when they were de- d of it by the treachery and ingratitude of meluke of Ali, who commanded the army. time after the city of Said, belonging to r, being besieged by the Turkish forces,

Ali

Ali and Daher marched to its
of seven thousand cavalry. A
the enemy, the Turks, whose a
three times the number of th
raised the siege and decamped
city, where they took a position.

A.D. 1772. tant and regular engag
here took place: the T
entirely defeated, and D
the full possession of his terri
after intended to return to Cair
to render him assistance in th
his designs; and he had contr
with the Russians, who promi
enterprize; but Ali departe
without waiting for the Russia
the road thither he was attack
soner by a body of Mamelukes
med Bey had posted in the de
pose, and put to death soon a
is evident, projected the desig
self in the throne of the sultan
have accomplished his purpos
been better conducted, or had l
the most horrible ingratitude.
edly an extraordinary charact
not be ranked in the class of
was possessed, indeed, of the se
lifications, but want of cultur
from arriving at maturity and
was certainly animated with
taining true glory, and this w
portion of weak or vulgar min

A.D. 1773. Mohammed Bey, wh
in his authority by the
played, during a reign

of a traitor, and the ferocity of a rob-
ofessing to be the defender of the sul-
hts, and the minister of his will, he
customary oaths of allegiance and un-
obedience, and remitted to Constanti-
tribute, which had been interrupted for
. To prove his loyalty, he requested
on of the Porte to declare war against
aher, to which he was instigated by
of a private nature. He, therefore,
an army into Palestine, and besieged
ich after some time capitulated. A
the Mamelukes, however, entered the
hich they attempted to plunder; but
bitants defending themselves, a combat
The whole army then rushed into the
d all the inhabitants of whatever age,
condition, were put to the sword. The
s and brutal conqueror caused a pyra-
e formed of the heads of the unfortu-
ferers, as a monument of his victory and

the death of Mohammed, Mou- A.D.
Ibrahim Bey agreed to divide 1776.
mand between them. The two
rates, however, soon experienced a for-
opposition in the adherents of the late
, who secretly repining at seeing all the
y usurped by a new faction, and them-
ntirely excluded, determined to shake off
ke. They, therefore, united into one
nder the appellation of the House of Ali
chiefs of which were Hassan and Is-
y, who conducted their enterprize with
lity and secrecy, that Mourat and Ibra-
e compelled to abandon Cairo, and to
seek

A.D. 1783. made some suspicious a ments, another attemp them was immediately r to carry on the war, a contrib dred thousand dollars* was commerce of Cairo, and the tradesmen were compelled to modities under the prime cost. stores of the army were conve boats: and Mourat marched his cavalry, along the banks o of the exiles, at the sight of th ately dispersed, and others s enemy; but Hassan and Isr capitulate, retreated towards hundred and fifty horse. Ha selves very advantageously precipices of the cataract, M possible to force them, and th Cairo; and the exiles regain

xpedition was undertaken by the French
he sole design of subduing that country,
ittempting to direct their arms by the Red
nd thus reach the British possessions in
is not certainly known, but the latter opi-
generally prevails. The town of Alexan-
was the first object of the French com-
er, which he took by assault, after putting
ght the Arabs and Mamelukes who de-
d it, and of whom he killed about three
ed. Having entered the city, Bonaparte
bled the Turkish chiefs, and explained to
the motives of his visiting Egypt, which
ted to be the deliverance of the country
the tyranny and usurpation of the beys,
were equally the enemies of the Porte and
French people; and having required from
an oath that they would neither injure nor
y him, he permitted the greater number to
the places which they occupied. Having
nued three days in Alexandria, to render
rganization of the city complete, of which
al Kleber was left in command, the French
commenced their march across the de-

sooner had the French landed in Egypt,
the wretched food, and still more wretched
r, which alone could be procured—the sting
sects, the filth and misery with which they
everywhere surrounded, gave them a dis-
for the country, and inclined them to think,
it was still visited by the plagues of Pha-
. But if the entrance into Egypt was not
ing, the march of the army across the de-
from Alexandria to Rosetta, completely
up the measure of disappointment and

disgust. Unaccustomed to the heat of a climate, unused to traverse barren ar desarts, and unobservant of the orde had been issued, the soldiers exhausted t visions, or suffered them to spoil, be reached the end of their journey. Rose ever, which made no resistance to the of the French troops, terminated many difficulties. Having left a garrison in t under the command of general Me another at Rhamanieh, a town farth river, at the entrance of the canal of Al whither a column of the army had been at the same time with that to Rosett parte continued his march along the the Nile towards Cairo.

Hitherto no obstacle of importance sented itself to the French invader; b arrival of the army near Gizeh, Bonapa that Mourat Bey had assembled all h in the neighbourhood of a village ca babeh, where he intended to dispute a his farther progress. The Mamelukes to ten thousand men, and fought with courage; but the action, though blo neither long nor doubtful. Part of of the Mamelukes was either exterm the sword, or drowned in the river with Mourat Bey, retreated to Upp and saved themselves by flight. T which was denominated the *Battle o mids*, convinced the French, from the resistance made by an inferior army, in European tactics, that they had no enemy to combat and overcome. Th the slain were, however, extremely

Mameluke carried with him in his march
nt of his fortune, or his plunder.
sequence of the event of this battle, Bo-
vas waited on by the principal inhabi-
l magistrates of Cairo, which the army
in triumph. The French commander
tely parted his troops into three divi-
e of which was sent under the command
ral Desaix, to pursue the Mamelukes
escaped into Upper Egypt; the second
at Cairo; and with the third he followed
Bey, who had fled so precipitately, that
l not be overtaken. Having returned to
Bonaparte employed himself in arrang-
details of the administration of Lower
sent garrisons to Damietta and Man-
nd established lazarettos to oblige every
t came from suspected countries, to per-
uarantine. He also commanded work-
› be constructed at Gizeh, for furnishing
erent materials of the army; formed an
tration for coining money; and published
f the relative value of French and Egyp-
rency.

; did the subjugation of Egypt appear to
plete; but a dreadful destiny awaited the
hich had conveyed thither this hitherto
te commander. On the first of August,
itish admiral Nelson, who had received
mand of a considerable number of ships,
d off the mouth of the Nile, and made
ions for attacking the enemy. The
fleet, which consisted of one ship of one
d and twenty guns, three of eighty, and
seventy-four, besides others of lesser size,
anchor in the bay of Aboukir. The ad-

miral placed them as near the shore as po
in a strong and compact line of battle, fl
by four frigates and many gun-boats, and
tected in the van by a battery. By one of
daring and skilful manœuvres, however,
distinguish the commanders of the British
the English admiral having penetrated wi
half of his squadron between the French
and the shore, placed the enemy betwee
fires, and commenced the attack.

At sun-set the action began, and soo
peared to be in favour of the English.
parties fought with great spirit and br
Brueys, the French admiral, was deprived
life by a ball; and in the space of an hour
his ship the l'Orient, took fire, and blew u
a dreadful explosion. This event decid
victory; but the French continued the e
ment during the night, till almost every c
on board had perished. The approach of
ing discovered their vessels immovable
water, and in possession of the enemy.
English took nine sail of the line, and o
burned by order of her commander. Th
portant victory, which will ever appea
lustre in the annals of history, destroy
whole naval force of the French in the
terranean, insulated the army of Egyp
their country, and precluded all means
taining supplies from France.

Left entirely to the resources of his c
vention, Bonaparte continued his civil a
litary operations with still greater activity
Belbeis and Salahieh forts and redoubts we
structed, which might resist the attacks
Turks on the side of Syria; and plans we

etter defence of Alexandria and
. A national institute was es-
of whose objects of attention
ation of salt-petre; the construc-
nd water mills, which served for
aising the water into cisterns, on
cquiring a brackish and disagree-
ing on the ground, and also for
corn; the composition of bread;
on of fermented liquors, as a sub-
; besides natural history, arts,
other researches of science or
e shieks of different provinces
ned, who discussed with calm-
y certain topics of political œco-
festival of the anniversary of the
happened at this period, these
joined in the celebration, which
airo with great pomp and solem-
courteous and politic manners,
avoured to obtain the esteem and
s new allies, which a continuance
r the Beys and Mamelukes, their
ned also to confirm. At this pe-
of Ibrahim Bey, who had fled
were defeated by a detachment
n the coast; and the troops of
ttacked and put to flight by De-
pyramids of Saccara, in Upper

g been rumoured at Cairo, that
or had declared war against the
ypt and the French nation, an in-
e out, in the first commotions of
Dupuis, the commandant of the
l soldiers were massacred. The

house of General Caffarelli was l
taken, and all that had defended it
diately put to death. The French,
covering from their surprize and
made a strong and speedy resistanc
surgents; the cannon was pointed i
rection; and the Turks and Arabs,
posed the mass of the revolt, were put
and compelled to seek refuge in thei
and places of worship. These they con
safe and inviolable asylums, because th
had never presumed to enter them, fro
gard to the religious usages and opinio
people, to which the commander in ch
affected to be a convert, as his procla
evince. Bonaparte summoned the insurg
deliver up their principals in the revol
the Turks refusing, the mosques were f
and every soul perished.

This revolt, which was fatal to the Arab
Turks, served to confirm the power and
ence of Bonaparte. The Egyptians wer
concerned in insurrection; and the Greeks
had hitherto remained neuter, joined the Fr
This was deemed by the General a favou
opportunity for publishing the declarati
war, made against him by the Ottoman
nd having secured the continuance of in
anquillity, he prepared for extending hi
ects, or, to use his own language, "f
rther deliverance and regeneration of t
n world."

England, however, could not suffer the
ment of such a colony in Egypt, so ne
ile to the East India territories, as
there combined with the Porte in a

attack, which was intended, if possi-
pel those new and dangerous neigh-
m their conquests and usurpations.
rations were made in Syria, and com-
the care of the pacha Djezzar, who
verse Asia Minor, and to attack Egypt
werful army. At the same time a
ersion was also to be made towards
s of the Nile, and by the remains of
of Mourat Bey in Upper Egypt, united
ner hostile parties. Whilst Bonaparte
oyed with the members of the Insti-
aking surveys of the canal of Suez, of
stiges were found still remaining, he
med of the preparations and move-
Djezzar, whom the Grand-Signor had
pacha of Egypt. He resolved, there-
arch into Syria with an army of about
n, and to attack the enemy before they
to commence offensive operations.

the absence of Bonaparte General
as charged with the command of Cairo;
Menou was stationed at Rosetta; and
-General Almeyras at Damietta, the
ons of which he had orders to finish.
Marmont was entrusted with the com-
Alexandria, which became daily of
portance, and was threatened both by
ish and the plague. General Desaix
l with his detachment of troops in Up-
t, and endeavoured, by redoubled dili-
l activity, to keep in awe the remains
melukes, and to prevent Mourat Bey
ng advantage of the expedition into
n the mean time, Sir Sydney Smith, the
mmodore, one of the most gallant of-

ficers

ficers of his age, being informed of the
movements of the troops under Bonaparte,
deavoured to retard the General by the bo
bardment of Alexandria, which, however,
jured the French no farther, than by destroyi
two of their transports.

During the time of the expedition into Syr
which completely failed, chiefly owing to t
skill and bravery of Sir Sidney Smith, sym
toms of revolt were manifested in several parts
the country; parties of the Mamelukes, dispers
and driven into the western desarts, had enter
the provinces of Lower Egypt, and endeavour
to excite the Arabs against the French. In o
der, also, to divide the attention of the enem
and to give more confidence to the insurgen
the English dispatched admiral Blanket up t
Red Sea with a few ships of war, some of whi
approached Suez. Acts of rigour and severi
were exercised on the promoters of the revol
villages were burned to suppress the seditio
and the presence of Bonaparte again complete
re-established order and tranquillity. No soon
was the commander in chief returned into Egy
than he immediately applied himself to repair t
losses sustained by the army in the Syrian ex
dition; and in the space of three weeks, the d
ferent corps were completed, and the troops
a condition to undertake new operations, and
face the enemy.

In the mean while, Sir Sydney Smith, purs
ing with ardour the execution of the plan
campaign projected against Egypt, found an
crease of zeal and activity on the part of t
Ottomans, after the French had been defeat
and repelled before St. John d'Acre. Seid M
tap

acha assembled at Rhodes the troops for the attack of Alexandria; Euro- icers were appointed to direct the details enterprize; and the combined English kish fleets sailed for the coast of Egypt. vements of the Mamelukes and Arabs d the projects of the allies, and the ap- of their armament. Bonaparte was in of Mourat Bey, near the pyramids of when he received intelligence from Alex- that a Turkish fleet of one hundred sail chored in the road of Aboukir, from ie Turks had landed three thousand men, illery, on the shore of the peninsula, and the fort by storm. All the generals ading detachments of troops, which were n, were ordered to march towards the f landing, and to make Rhamanieh the rendezvous, where the army soon after ed.

ng attacked and obtained possession of boukir, the Turks began to entrench ves, and to form magazines. Their force, ncreased daily, was estimated at 15,000 d they appeared to be waiting for greater ements, and for the junction of Mourat order to invest the city of Alexandria. rte perceiving that the enemy intended fy and maintain themselves in the pe- determined to attack them; and having d his troops to the wells, between Alex- and Aboukir, and received information ng the position of the Turks, formed his engagement. Mustapha Pacha defended rance of the peninsula by two lines of and by entrenchments, which were still imperfect.

Turks were dislodged and surr
perished by the fire of the ene
drowned. After suffering variou
French seizing the moment, whe
forces sallied from their entrenchm
the redoubt and carried it. In v
tapha Pacha endeavour, by every
to rally his troops, which were n
every point. The Turks fled on
threw themselves into the sea; th
could not reach the vessels whic
distant, and perished in the wa
mainder of the army, with Mus
was surrounded and made priso
exception of only two hundred m
of Aboukir, after a bombardment
surrendered to the enemy; and t
pacha and two thousand men thre
arms, and were made prisoners o
victory over the Turks was attend

ountry. Bonaparte weighing these mat-
urely, and being informed of the state
)pe and France at that period, left a let-
aining the nomination of Kleber to the
mmand in Lower, and of Desaix to that
Egypt, and secretly sailed for the French
In the directions given, however, to Ge-
leber, he was instructed to continue the
tions with the Ottoman court, which Bo-
had himself commenced; and which ar-
hat the commander in chief did not con-
gypt as tenable, after the destruction of
, and the absolute nullity of the French

various conferences and correspondence
r Sydney Smith, the British commodore
nipotentiary, it was agreed that the French
ıould embark with arms, baggage, and
and be transported to France, as well in
ı vessels, as in others furnished by the
In this mode, so inglorious for the French
and so little honourable for those who
d the expedition, was this celebrated con-
of Egypt about to terminate; and what
ated the misfortune was, that the English,
ivals, would thereby obtain possession of
ountry. This treaty was signed at El-
. It had not been doubted but that the
h court would accede to the terms agreed
)ugh the instructions received and trans-
by Lord Keith were entirely adverse.
rand vizier, by virtue of the convention,
:en put in possession of most places in
, and of all in Upper Egypt, and required
e French should also deliver up the cita-
Cairo. Kleber, however, not only re-
fused,

a furious and dreadful engagement
Turks, however, were thrown into
their whole army, consisting of 40
took themselves to flight in all dir
camp was abandoned; and the ro
neral. The Turks had eight thou
led or wounded, whilst the loss o
whose army amounted only to 15,
paratively trifling. Kleber, havir
Cairo, punished, in an exemplary
cruelties and horrors, which, durin
had been inflicted on the friends
of the French.

After the battle of Heliopolis,
of Cairo, the French army was r
surrounded with the most brilliant
Kleber formed the Greeks and C
talions, whom he trained to the us
clothed in the uniform of his cour
neral, however, was assassinated
Menou succeeded to the chief com

t length the English fleet appeared in the of Aboukir, and as soon as the wind was urable, the debarkation of the troops under eral Sir Ralph Abercromby commenced. sailors rowed, standing, with incredible vi- r, regardless of the fire of the French artil- , while the troops lay at the bottom of the ts. The French stationed on the shore, were pelled to retreat towards Alexandria and etta; and the English proceeded to blockade fort of Aboukir, which capitulated soon after. the mean time, General Menou, who had informed of the arrival and debarkation of British forces, and also of the approach of grand vizier on the side of Syria, collected troops, and marched to meet the English ny. Previously, however, to his reaching Rha- ieh, Generals Lanusse and Friant, with a all number of forces, had the boldness and in- pidity to engage the whole army of the op- nents, consisting, as it is said, of 16,000 in- try, 2000 marines from the fleet, 200 horse, d ten pieces of cannon.* After an engagement which the English lost 1,500 and the French 0 men, the latter retreated towards Alexan- ia, to provide for the defence of that city; and e former situated themselves with their right the sea, near the Roman camp, and their left posite to the point of lake Maadieh; and im- diately began, with great activity, to fortify is position, by a strong line of redoubts.

* This amount of the troops is given by General Reg- er; we know not how far he is correct in his statement: the English and French forces in his account of this paign; but he is palpably partial to his own country- n.

pieces of cannon, having assembled b
light at the advanced posts, marched
the English army. A false assault o
was commenced whilst it was dark, an
ed in attracting the attention of the
General Lanusse, who commanded the
immediately moved to engage the rig
English, where the most formidable
intended. Perceiving, however, tha
gade under General Valentin, who wa
his march towards the redoubt and th
camp, was checked by the heavy fire o
tish forces, he hastened to the spot, r
led them back to the charge. At that
he received a mortal wound; and th
with which he had animated the troo
diately abated; and they were repuls
English. Several other attempts were
the enemy's right, but with no bette
and the forces found it impossible to

s of a first assault. The English, con-
hat the principal attack was directed
heir right, marched their reserve to its
General Menou then ordered the ca-
charge the enemy, when a most dread-
age ensued. They penetrated to the
ne of the British infantry and the re-
The brave Abercromby, the English
who was there with his staff, was mor-
inded. General Roize, the commander
ench cavalry, was killed; a prodigious
of officers and privates shared the same
, when the broken corps retired in dis-
ind the infantry, not one fourth sur-
those who had charged. The destruc-
he cavalry scarsely left any hope, and
General Menou ordered a retreat;
French, at eleven in the morning, re-
their position on the heights of Nico-

attle seems to have decided the fate of
s well as the remaining objects of the
x thousand Turkish troops arrived soon
he road of Aboukir; and the grand vi-
my passed the desert. Rosetta and
ieh successively fell into the hands of
ish; and the French were deprived of
a few of the most considerable places.
lish invested Gizeh, on the left bank of
, while the vizier pressed Cairo on the
A bridge of boats was erected over the
Chobra, by which means a communi-
as kept open between the two besieging
nd the position of the French became
y difficult and dangerous. A suspen-
ms was proposed, in consequence of

geon. The most re
life of this caliph was the
Jerusalem from the Frank
the immense plunder which
brought from thence. M
eighth year of his reign.

His son and successor, Ar
A. D. 1101. time only five years o
ately after the death
claimed caliph, and in
thority. The tender age of Ar
uncle to attempt to dethrone
the caliphat. With that intent
Alexandria, which was then
slave belonging to the gran
means of promises and rewar
to be proclaimed caliph in
who governed the kingdom d
of Amer, was no sooner appr
than he marched an army to
of Alexandria, which in a litt
and compelled the traitors to s
tion. The grand-vizier retur
Cairo, and continued to condu
kingdom with such moderati
that he acquired the affection
the Egyptians; and the cali
and during his regency, enjo
happy, and prosperous reign.
was very ill rewarded for the se
to Amer and to the state; bei
graced by the prince, and ex
ignominious treatment. Amer
a cruel, proud dissembler;
bauchery, addicted to gaming
all religion. In other respects,

...ound by the
...Abbas, soon
...ngdom; and
...veyed them-
...attended by
...the late ca-
...ha, who were
...of Ascalon,
...en engaged
...s. Accord-
...to intercept
...engagement
...and his son
...ed to Cairo,
...the crimes
...His right
...; the
...; and
...till he
...ed to ashes.
...loss of his
...at, but died
...the two
...ccessful in

...his grand-
...of
...the A. D.
...off. 1161.
...er, having
...ich he had
...ter, named
...than con-
...ler to mor-
...a box, in
...urges used
...in

is permitted among them; but the
nerally content with one wife. The
children seems to obtain a speedy
ascendancy over passion and pleasu
a striking and noble part of the char
savages, which ought not to be f

The Gallas always fight in fam
against one another or a common
are reputed excellent soldiers for a
possess not constancy nor perseve
taining a second attack. They w
incredible marches; swim the d
taking hold of the tails of their
much injury in a short time, an
turn the same way. They are
able as light horse for a regular
enemy's country. They never g
quarter; and the report of their

ance. All the tribes of Gallas sur-
ssinia from east to west, and make
incursions into that country, which
n as a pallestra, or place of exercise.
re would have been destroyed by them
, had they not been often engaged
rs among themselves, which afforded
ite and tranquillity to the Abyssinians.
ia lies entirely in the torrid zone, yet,
t of the great rains, the forests, moun-
rivers in this country, there are some
f it which are as cool and temperate
or Portugal. The vallies and sandy
owever, are extremely hot and scorch-
insupportable to any other people ex-
sinians; and the difference of climate
ceptible in receding from, or approxi-
, the Red Sea. The winds here are
d impetuous; the thunder and light-
il, alarming, and dangerous; and the
ike torrents of water: during the sea-
ese meteors, the air is unwholesome,
ed with a pestilential kind of disease.
ure and heat, those valuable means
ity, cover their meadows with grass
newed, and their trees with blossoms
at the same time. The soil produces
rley, millet, and other grain; but the
corn in this country is called *teff*;
mall and slender, and becomes nutri-
palatable when made into bread. A
rs in Abyssinia which possesses a sin-
ue, by the touch and smell of which all
creatures are thrown into a state of
d insensibility. This plant is so much
beneficial, as there are serpents that
have

fruits of their labours, some of whic
in small holes and caverns of the
adds Mr. Bruce, "I cannot for m
conceive, that in a country where so
sand hives are kept, there was any
ing to a bird a peculiar instinct, or
discovering honey, when at the sam
ture had deprived him of the power
himself of any advantage from the
for man seems in this case to be m
service of the moroc, which is ver
from the ordinary course of things
tainly needs him not, for on every tr
every hillock, he may see plenty of c
own disposal. I cannot then but thi
submission to these natural philoso
the whole of this is an improbable
did I ever hear a single person in Ab
gest, that either this or any other bir
a property."*

powder, of which a paste is afterwards
d their meat is said to be agreeable and
ie.

ws have been settled in this country
immemorial. There are also many
ans and Pagans. The religion of this
ple is very little known, but consists
superstitious rites and ceremonies, than
oration of idols. The Christians are
numerous in Abyssinia. Amongt such
of people, a proportionate variety of
s may be expected; and, in fact, every
and almost every district, has its own
r dialect. The court language consists
ure of almost all those of the empire;
ither deficient in copiousness nor me-
xpression. The Ethiopic style retains
it dignity, being not only used in all
gious and learned books, but also in
s and records.*

except those Ethiopians who, in the
Augustus, were considered by the Ro-
disagreeable and ugly, the Abyssinians
neral well proportioned. They are of a
majestic stature; are rather brown than
re large and sparkling eyes; noses more
flat; thin lips, and very white teeth.
of a sober and temperate disposition,
rally inclined to virtue and piety. They
uarrel with each other; but when that
in the first returns of reason they refer
ion of the matter to an arbiter, or to
of the place. The administration of

geez, or language of the shepherds, was only re-
riting; and the sacred scriptures being in that
evented the entire disuse of it. *Bruce.*

justice

to hold out again
forces, till the ele
sions, when Gene
cessation of arms
period a convention
same terms were
the garrison of Ca
cordingly embarked
quitted the coast of
that the preliminari
tween France and E
vince was restored
its former possessors.

CH

History

THE extensive
by various name
the inhabitants call
extends from six
twenty degrees of

justice is neither tedious nor complex. I one pleads his own cause; and when judg is once given, they faithfully observe the t without murmur or appeal. They are re fected in their manners, and fond of dress. women are permitted to appear abroad, an their friends and relations. The wives o sons of quality lay their inclinations und restraint, though their husbands are muc pleased with their conduct; but those of rior rank are generally faithful and true.

"Although," says Mr. Bruce, "the have told us a great deal respecting thei riage and polygamy, yet nothing may more safety be averred, than that there marrying in Abyssinia, unless that which tracted by mutual consent, without any and subsisting only till dissolved by diss each other, may be so called."* When a ration takes place, the children are divid tween them. One woman may probably six or seven husbands successively.

Their dishes are excellent, and of v kinds. They have neither wine nor though they might make an abundance o former. Their usual beverage is hyd which is a mixture of honey and water, br to a state of fermentation. At a banq Abyssinia, we are told, that a cow or b brought to the door of the room, where the pany is assembled; and the dew-lap beh so deep as to arrive at the fat, a few dro blood are sprinkled on the ground. They penetrate the skin, on the back of the beg

* Bruce's Travels.

f the spine, and strip off the hide
bull half-way down its ribs. All
hen cut off the buttocks in solid
, and eaten raw with teff bread;
ial continues alive till nearly the
umed. The men are fed by the
having wrapped the meat and
form of a cartridge, thrust it into
son's mouth they find open and
hich from its bulk is in danger of
This is considered as a mark of
id the greater a man would appear,
ce of flesh and bread he will take
ath. Besides, the more noise he
g, the more polite he is thought to
ver drink till they have finished

till lately unacquainted with the
d in different arts; and for them,
r the knowledge of using them,
ebted to the Jesuits. When, there-
o had never before seen one stone
another in a regular manner, be-
ng with high stories, they were
the sight, and called it a house
. Notwithstanding their paucity
had cloth, stuffs exceedingly well
wels of the neatest and most cu-
nship. The Turks and the Galli,
r frontiers in a continual state of
ild prevent the Abyssinians from
o foreign countries, even if they
nclination. They are also unwil-
entrance into Abyssinia should be
Jews, Arabians, and Armenians,
mon merchants or brokers; and

leather, honey, wax, ivory, and
superfluities. Notwithstanding, t
productions of the country, Aby
poor.

They have neither inns nor pub
the entertainment of strangers, but
their extreme indigence, they are
and hospitable. If an unknown
tinue in a village or camp of the
longer than three hours, the whol
is under the necessity of lodging a
dating him at the public charge.
need only enter the first hut or tent
acquaint the owner with his want
diately furnishes him with all ne
conveniences from the chief of the
women never have occasion for
midwife during the time of part
bring forth with geat facility, and
children without trouble or er

elves with what is brought from Nigritia
ther parts, rather than hazard the subju-
and oppression of their own country.
gather, however, great quantities of that
washed down by the torrents from the
tains, and which consists of large grains.
is more scarce among them; but they
mines of lead and iron, which are very va-
. But, unable to endure the unwhole-
damps and vapours, to support the ground
is in danger of overwhelming them, or to
off the waters which threaten an inunda-
they work little in those mines, and are
ed with the quantity of metal they find on
rface of the earth. Abyssinia is also sup-
not to be destitute of copper and tin.

ey dig salt from rocks in the shape of
s, but of different sizes and weights; that
h is on the surface of the rock is hard and
; but in the internal parts of the mine it is
cted from saline springs, where it is soft till
olidated by the heat of the sun. This ar-
, though very common, is considered as va-
le; and every person carries a small piece
, suspended in a bag, from the girdle.
n two friends or acquaintance meet, they
luce their bits of salt, and give them to each
r to lick. The refusal of this compliment
ither side would be considered as a gross
nt, and an open declaration of some inward
rivate resentment, or, at least, as a mark of
vility. It is said, that the heat of the cli-
e, which renders the mouth parched and
d, was the cause of this whimsical and dis-
eable custom; but it would certainly be
e cleanly and becoming, and at the same time

duced at the court of a petty prin
las. " He (the king) was sitti
" on the ground, in the middle c
ing his courtiers around him, eac
his hand. No sooner had I ent
whole company were in motion,
their rods upon me most unmer
obliged to betake myself to fligh
reached the door, which was
signal, they ceased to bastinade
me with many compliments." B
they treat their friends with th
who are invited and expected,
" that this was done to teach
those who visited them, that ther
greater or braver than theirs,
who accost them may learn to h
mean themselves before them."

The natural curiosities of Aby
lofty and almost inaccessible mou

th. Some of those ridges exhibit the semblance of walls, towers, and cities; others, such smooth and even surface, as renders them mirrors; and some are so hollowed out by ure, as to resemble apartments, churches, palaces. At the bottom of these mountains steep precipices, where the torrents roll wn great stones with a loud and tremendous se; and on their summits are plains, where ns have been built. Some parts of these untains have also been converted into prisons, ere the first children of their kings, whose perition for the throne was apprehended to productive of mischief, were kept in confinent, and languished in solitude and misery.

In these mountains, the beautiful rivers which ter Abyssinia have their rise. Mr. Bruce's defatigable labours have tended much to gra- y the geographer and the philosopher relative the source and progress of the Nile in Abysnia. That learned and ingenious traveller and its rise in the country of the Agows, the ring of which is twelve feet diameter, and parently surrounded with sods by the neighouring people, who worshipped the river. In e midst of this eminence is the first fountain the Nile, in which the water is clear and mpid, and is about three feet in diameter, nd six feet in depth. The second fountain is ss in diameter, but deeper than the first, and bout ten feet distant. The third is about twen- feet west from the first. These several foun- ins, which are consecrated as altars by the na- ves, and from the foot of each of which issues brisk rill, unite, and form one stream. Though e water is exposed to the scorching heat of the

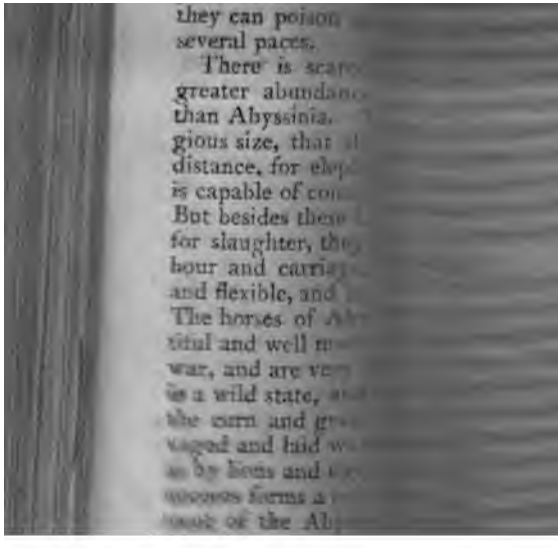
sun, and with
ceedingly col
The stream
after varying
ceiving many
their strengt
mountainous
scends a cata
sixty yards i
joins the Jem
through the l
still preserve
and brightne
and often c
confined situ
Begemder, a
cataract nea
grandest and
world. The
over this dre
thunder, an
dible distan
Bruce, "so
ages added
would not c
mory. It
a total obliv
other sublim
Below the

* "

nel between two rocks, with loud noise, and
tuous velocity. Here it assumes a south-
n direction, and, after being increased by
mber of tributary streams and rivulets,
a course almost due north. These wind-
and sudden changes of direction, for thou-
s of miles, prevented its royal and philo-
ical pursuers from reaching its source. Af-
assing along for many leagues, the Nile
forces its passage through an opening of
mountains which inclose the country of the
gas, and precipitates its waters over a
tful cataract, whose height is not less than
hundred and eighty feet! What terror and
ement must seize the mind of the travel-
who beholds such an assemblage of waters
ed, with the sound of thunder, from such
adful and stupendous height, into a vast
y base below, from whence in foam the
ipitated billows rebound to heaven! Not
, however, the tortured Nile has rest: soon
r, it is hurried over two other cataracts,
g confined between the mountains of Dyre,
egla, where is found the fine gold of Sen-
which the natives call tibbar.

directing its cource close by Sennar, the Nile,
r running nearly due north and south, turns
ward, and, when swollen to its greatest
ht, affords a prospect pleasing and delight-
in these dreary and inhospitable regions.
ling majestically along, it bends to the north-
; and uniting its waters with those of Tac-
te, a large river, which also rises in Abys-
flows by a great and populous town call-
Bendi, which was probably at some period

the



they can poison
several paces.

There is scar
greater abundan
than Abyssinia.
gious size, that
distance, for ele
is capable of co
But besides these
for slaughter, the
hour and carria
and flexible, and
The horses of A
tiful and well m
war, and are ve
in a wild state,
the corn and gr
vaged and laid w
as by lions and
nocuous forms a
ment of the Ab

place of refreshment
vans, at the time they passed fr
Ethiopia. Bending north-east, it
chain of mountains, where is the
last cataract, frightfully high, th
tremendous as that at Alata, alrea
ed. Having passed these catarac
enters Egypt.

The lake Tzana, or Dembea, is
largest expanse of water known in
Its greatest breadth is thirty-five m
length forty-nine. During the d
from October to March, the lake b
but, after the rivers which surround
it necessarily swells, extends itself ir
country, and of course covers a n
surface. In this lake are eleven
islands, which were formerly used
for people of distinction, or for a v
treat. The reason why the Nile do
its waters with those of
sage thro

The Portuguese, however, by dig-
nd not only plenty of sweet water,
undance of excellent fish.

overnment of Abyssinia has been al-
narchical, and entirely despotic; and,
ts origin and uninterrupted series of
s are very doubtful and uncertain, no
f time can be found in their tradition
s in which those princes did not rule
itrary authority, and claim an absolute
feasible right over the lives and liberties
subjects, as well in matters ecclesiasti-
vil. There are no written laws to re-
e exorbitant power of the prince, or to
nd secure the privilege and property
ubject; and the clergy have been the
sons who have ever dared to oppose an
resistance to the unjust proceedings of
eror. These princes boast that they
endants of Menilek, or David, the son
reat Solomon, by the queen of Sheba;
virtue of this noble descent, they are
agubs, and addressed with the title of
ings. They also carry in their arms the
he tribe of Judah, holding a cross, with
nd inscribed: *The lion of the tribe of Ju-
conquered.*

espect which is paid to the emperor is
o his title and dignity, and none of his
ever approach him, without exhibiting
f the most abject submission and ser-
He does not, indeed, conceal himself
ublic view, like the eastern monarchs;
ws himself readily and frequently to his
The emperor lives more in tents than
es; but these tents are as magnificent

as

as palaces, while his guard forms a
and his court a pompous and splendi
The whole camp appears like a vast,
regular city, in whose center, or on
nent part, is displayed the imperia
excelling all the rest in richness a
The retinue of the emperor is augme
women, during military expeditions
they are a great incumbrance. Whe
breaks up, or removes from one pl
other, even in time of peace, those
through which the army passes ex
real calamity, because the roads m
paired, and provisions furnished and
by the inhabitants, who are thus s
ruined throughout the whole empi
ever surprising it may appear, the c
vided into parishes, each of which h
clergyman, with deacons, and othe
tics, who perform divine service, an
the youth in religion and morality.

Whenever an enemy is near, the arm
in close rank, and in the best order.
are extended, and the emperor, with
cers and guards, keeps in the center.
times, no regularity is observed, and
sound of kettle-drums, and of other
struments, intimates the approach of

The crown of Abyssinia is hered
must devolve on the posterity of Men
first monarch; but the succession doe
cessarily pass to the eldest. The em
he thinks proper, can make choice of
son, whom he deems more worthy, o
inclined to favour. This custom has
occasioned jealousy and misunderstа

oung princes, and sometimes been
f civil wars; and, in all probability,
o the practice of keeping all those
had a right to the throne confined
op of a mountain, where they are
rded, and no person suffered to come
Neither message nor letter can be
o these unfortunate prisoners; and
iged to dress themselves in the usual
common people, lest they should
ud and ambitious.
tom, it has been said, was abolished
irect reproach of one of the king's
ng a fondness and partiality for this
as only eight years of age, the em-
porting with him one day, when a
roached, and observed that the child
g tall. No sooner did the young
these words, than looking tenderly
r, he said, "Have I become big
e sent to the mountain!" Affected
ing apostrophe of his son, the em-
anded the custom to be abolished,
his council to swear that it should
-established. Mr. Bruce, however,
l in force.
mony of the coronation of their
nd and magnificent. Much of the
consists in religious rites, such as
liturgy, and singing psalms and
ble to the occasion. The grand al-
unces the monarch to the people,
them that he is made choice of to

nion, the ceremony terminates in act
vity.

The emperors, in imitation of Solor
whom they pretend to be descended, al
solves the liberty of having a plurality
and, like him, of different religions;
that both Christianity and Paganism
encouraged at the same time. From
to religion, however, those Pagan
metan princesses have, in general,
structed and baptized, previously to
coming the wives of the monarch.
the emperor has made choice of a pe
to be his wife, they attend the church
and, having received the sacrament,
the royal pavilion, accompanied by
court, in their richest attire. This
being finished, the nobles and clergy
mously treated, and the feast d
made till every thing is consumed w

ted to do before, and is seated on a
near the imperial throne; and, upon a
being made, one of the chaplains of the
or enters the court, and proclaims the em-
after which the crown is put upon her
but she is not anointed.

Abyssinian emperors receive holy orders,
me of them have been consecrated priests,
iciated in that capacity; but with this re-
n, that if by any means they shed the
of man, they were immediately divested
r office. In general, however, the mo-
confines himself to the deaconship, which
granted to the nobles and great officers
court, who assume these orders, that they
njoy the privilege of the clergy; enter
e sanctuary; present the cross to be kiss-
id, what is more than all besides, have
ity and power in that body of people of
by ordination they form a part. The
's principal employment indeed is ordina-
A number of men and children present
elves at a distance, and there stand from
ty, not daring to approach him. He
sks who these are; and, being told that
re persons who wish to be deacons, he
two or three signs with a cross, and
with his mouth twice or thrice upon them,
, "Let them be deacons." I saw once
army of Begemder made deacons, who
st returned from shedding the blood of
ousand men. They were drawn up as be-
escribed, and the abuna stood about a
r of a mile distant from them. With
my were mingled about one thousand

reign of the several kingdoms and p
this extensive empire. He disposes
lands throughout his dominions, exce
and Dembea, where are some noble
leged families, whose properties anc
unless in case of rebellion, he neve
from their ancient possessors. Form
the custom of the emperors not to
public; and it was seldom known th
terfered in the affairs of government,
which was generally committed to two
whom they denominated *favourites*.
tice, however, has been abolished, anc
since considered it as prudent and ex
shew themselves to their subjects at
or four times in a year; though no
mitted to see them eat, besides the
feed them. Even the empress is d
privilege, though she dines and sups i
with her ladies; and when the mon

iness formerly, he remained constantly
n of his palace, which had a communi-
ith the audience and council, by means
olding doors, or large windows, the bot-
which were about three steps from the
These doors or windows were latticed
ss bars of wood like a cage, and a thin
or veil of taffety silk was hung within it;
by darkening the inner room, the king
y person in the outer chamber, whilst he
was visible to no one. The constant
which Abyssinia has been engaged, since
ometans took possession of Adel, have
ed this troublesome custom to be wholly
e, unless on particular occasions, and at
when it is still observed with the an-
ictness: and we find, in the history of
ia, that the army and kingdom have fre-
owed their safety to the personal beha-
id conduct of the king, in distinguishing
osing himself in battle, which advantage
st have lost, had the original custom pre-
However, to this day, when he is abroad
back, or sitting in any of his apartments
where people are admitted, he is so co-
hat his eyes only are visible."*
the officer who is denominated Kal
delivers the words of the king to the as-
convened in council, the members rise
id on their feet as if the monarch were
If, upon a division, a majority of them
ist him, they are frequently punished for
ontrary to his sentiments; for, though it
stood by convening them together, that

* Bruce's Travels.

his office: and the sentence often savours necessity of paying for the crime comm He therefore incurs no punishment, and posed to no shame, by his injustice.

In criminal cases, if the accused be guilty, he is imprisoned by the judge, till made sufficient restitution and satisfaction person he had injured; or if the crime is tal, he is delivered into the hands of the a to be punished with death, at his discretio that of the deceased. This latter custom to have been borrowed from the Jews, a thorizes cruelty, and multiplies revenge. a murder cannot be sufficiently proved a any man, all the inhabitants of the plac to where it was committed, are severely or condemned to some corporal punish which prevents all concealments, and ma tions of that nature. The greatest incc ence and detriment attending these co justice are, that they allow no witnesses heard except those of the plaintiff, whos mony it is not always in the power of the dant to invalidate and annul.

The king of Abyssinia very often jud pital crimes himself. That judicature loned favourable, where the judge is punish, and ready to reward. No man demned to suffer death by the king in for the first offence, unless he shall have mitted parricide, or sacrilege, or some dreadful crime. In general, the life and of the prisoner are considered and oppo his immediate guilt, and the decision is accordingly.

In Abyssinia, when the prisoner is cond

pital offence, he is not remitted to
ich would be thought cruel, but is
ly executed, conformably to his sen-
he greatest punishments in this coun-
e cross, excoriation, or the flaying
lapidation, or the stoning to death.
is chiefly inflicted on strangers, called
r religious causes. Another barbar-
ment is plucking out the offender's
elty which is frequently committed in
, and is generally inflicted on rebels
ected persons. The dead bodies of
slain for treason, murder, and violence
hway, are seldom buried; the streets
r are strewed with pieces of their car-
ch bring the wild beasts in multitudes
city as soon as it becomes dark, inso-
t it is scarcely possible for any person
safety during the night. "The dogs,"
Bruce, "used to bring pieces of human
o the house and court yard, in order to
with greater security. This was most
to me, but so often repeated, that I
ed to leave them in possession of such
."*

ny of the emperor is by no means equal
ent of his dominions, nor indeed to the
of the government, if we consider the
enemies by whom this country is sur-
and how frequently the frontier pro-
invaded and plundered. The largest
ch the king of Abyssinia ever brought
field at any one time, exclusive of his
l troops, did not amount to more than

* Bruce's Travels.

fifty

carry firelocks, and supply the pl
bows having been in disuse for u
hundred years.

The reason why the Abyssini
no better is entirely owing to the
glect of discipline among them:
general stout and hardy, and
hunger and fatigue. Their slen
derived from the lands allotted t
peror, whilst they continue in h
when age or sickness comes up
lands are taken from them and g
who are able and willing to supp
The revenues of the king are b
considerable, were they faithfull
deposited in the treasury; but the
so many hands, and there are so
and privileged persons, that the
is received is very trifling.

The Abyssinian annals give an
journey of queen Saba to Jerus

of this particular account is not dis-
any Abyssinian. Nor is it any won-
a people, no less fond of what is mira-
ıd marvellous than the rest of the eas-
ons, should, in process of time, interpo-
ancient record with fabulous stories, in
obtain for it greater veneration and re-

ext article which relates to the religion
sinia, is their conversion to Christianity,
n all probability happened about the
). Athanasius, patriarch of Alexandria,
ıformed by Frumentius how much the
f Abyssinia were disposed to receive the
ordained him bishop of Axuma, and sent
her to propagate the religion of Christ,
hat period, the Abyssinians professed to
the doctrines of the gospel; and the
of Ethiopia continued in perfect unity
ndship with this bishop, till the time of
h; and though troubles and dissensions
om the heresies propagated in the east,
nained uncontaminated by any false or
s tenets. Arianism, however, made its
nce in the reign of the emperor Constan-
whom it was greatly favoured and re-
ıded.

able, by an established law, this abuna [illegible] be of Abyssinian extraction; and [illegible] and laity pay such regard to the observ this practice, which they deem as ancient conversion, that they would consider it a of heresy and apostacy even to call in its authority. Nor did they ever attem troduce any reformation in this point standing the tyrannical conduct of the drian patriarch and the abuna, but hav submitted to their jurisdiction and su The wisest of the Abyssinians, acc Mr. Bruce, were sensible of the great literature among them, and that, unles portunity of going to Jerusalem for in and of bringing the abuna, should be ally offered to their priests, no set would be more ignorant even in the dogmas of their profession. It was h that by a considerable stipend, some learning and respectability would be i accept this place, and to support an

ignorance and remissnes of those pa-
the performance of their office, we
eir wicked and immoral lives, many
ng accused of committing the greatest
l of living in the most scandalous
rly manner. One branch of their re-
s from the grant of dispensations, of
are the sole disposers. Anciently,
f the kingdom was appropriated and
he abuna, for the maintenance of his
and dignity, and for the support of
convents, and churches in the king-
s gift, however, has from different
een resumed by the king.

urch of Abyssinia there are different
grees. The *depseras* are neither priests
s, but a sort of Jewish Levites, or
who assist in all public offices of the
d whose head or superior has the
irection of the sacred pavilions in the
. As they boast that they are de-
m the Jews, they pretend to imitate
of the Jewish tabernacle and temple
m, and the dancing of king David
ark. The next in order are the *komos*,
kind of high-priests, and under whose
superintendance the inferior clergy,
ular affairs of the parish are placed.
have their maintenance assigned them
d do not labour for their support.
, who is a layman, is appointed by the
eceive the rents belonging to the
nd to give the priests the portion as-
.

more churches in Abyssinia than in
ountry; five or six may be seen

one view; and five times that num
elevated situation. Wherever a vict
gained, there a church is erected.
always near some running water, for
nience of purifications and ablution
the Abyssinians strictly observe th
law. They are frequently placed o
mit of a hill, surrounded entirely
The churches are of a circular form
thatched roofs, the tops of which
cones. The inner part consists of s
sions, according to the regulations p
the law of Moses. The Abyssinians
respect to these sacred edifices, and
ter them barefoot. Nothing embosse
lief, is to be seen in any of their pla
ship, as it would be considered as ido
prayers, psalms, and hymns, which
divine service, are suited to the occ
ciously composed, and performed
decency and devotion, and free from
and ceremony visible in the church o

The Itcheguè, who is the chief of
is ordained by two priests, that hol
cloth over him, while another offers u
He is a man of much greater conse
the abuna, in times of disturbance an
tion. The monks in Abyssinia do
convents as in Europe, but have separ
scattered round the church; and each
that part of his property which cons
The [illegible] in other countries, with respe
structure, form, church-service, government
discipline. These monks live an auste
lar life, are poor, and in a state of

in person having one day asked the em-
secretary, who had formerly been a monk,
did not bind themselves by some vow?
inister, who was of a gay, facetious dis-
, replied, "The votaries, prostrated on
h, promise the *abbot* aloud, that they will
chastity; but they add, in a low tone of
n the same manner as *you* observe it."
tenets of the Abyssinians are the same as
f the church of Alexandria. The two
in Christ, the two persons, their unity and
y, the inferiority of the manhood, with
matters of a like kind, are enveloped in
of ignorance and heresy. They believe
real presence; make use of extreme unc-
r the sick, and practise public confession.
never absolve penitents without inflicting
m reproaches and blows, with a stick or
ıpon the shoulders. With regard to cir-
ıon, and the observation of the seventh
ıey do not consider them as necessary to
on, in the same manner as the Jews. If,
ɔre, they seem to pay any religious regard
rite of circumcision, it is only on account
livine origin, and from its having been
ıligatory seal of the old covenant. The
ition to eat certain kinds of food is also
ered by them as a political institution.
y admit the Nicene, Constantinopolitan,
ian, and some other provincial councils;
no use of the apostles' creed; but receive
me books of the Old and New Testament,
onical, which are so acknowledged by us.
offer up supplications and prayers to the
and observe fasts and festivals in honour

...y and apostacy even
its authority. Nor did they
troduce any reformation in
standing the tyrannical cond
drian patriarch and the abun
submitted to their jurisdictio
The wisest of the Abyssini
Mr. Bruce, were sensible of t
literature among them, and th
portunity of going to Jerusale
and of bringing the abuna, sh
ally offered to their priests,
would be more ignorant ever
dogmas of their profession. I
that by a considerable stipen
learning and respectability wo
accept this place, and to sup
nance, by his example, literat
among them; and hence the
abuna was instituted.

Not understand...

the ignorance and remissnes of those pa-
s in the performance of their office, we
r their wicked and immoral lives, many
being accused of committing the greatest
, and of living in the most scandalous
sorderly manner. One branch of their re-
arises from the grant of dispensations, of
they are the sole disposers. Anciently,
ird of the kingdom was appropriated and
to the abuna, for the maintenance of his
tate and dignity, and for the support of
rgy, convents, and churches in the king-
This gift, however, has from different
ces been resumed by the king.
he church of Abyssinia there are different
of degrees. The *depteras* are neither priests
acons, but a sort of Jewish Levites, or
rs, who assist in all public offices of the
, and whose head or superior has the
nd direction of the sacred pavilions in the
camp. As they boast that they are de-
ed from the Jews, they pretend to imitate
rvice of the Jewish tabernacle and temple
usalem, and the dancing of king David
the ark. The next in order are the *komos*,
re a kind of high-priests, and under whose
and superintendance the inferior clergy,
ne secular affairs of the parish are placed.
riests have their maintenance assigned them
d, and do not labour for their support.
ward, who is a layman, is appointed by the
to receive the rents belonging to the
hes, and to give the priests the portion as-
l them.
ere are more churches in Abyssinia than in
ther country; five or six may be seen in
one

the whole surrounding country.
tants of Adel being informed that th
sign of the Abyssinian monarch was
them to abjure Mahometanism, and
Christians, were seized with a kind
and demanded to be led immediat
the enemy.

In the mean time, the king, wh
sick of a fever, and was scarcely ye
being acquainted that the Moorish
at no great distance from him, and we
reinforcement of troops from some o
districts of Adel, and had poisoned
ed the water in the front of the army
ed the fit-auraris to advance a day's
fore him.* This officer falling in w
party of the enemy, was defeated
back upon the main body of the
violent panic immediately seized
Abyssinian army, which refused t
and the greatest part requested

gency of affairs, and in the utmost
id, the king rode through the midst
, and endeavoured, by all the means
r, to quiet their fears, and to in-
with courage and resolution. In
inform them, that to retire to their
o seek their own destruction; and
hiefly horse, a plain and champaign
the most advantageous for them,
they could act with the greatest
ling no sign of content or convic-
r minds, he requested that those
ot inclined to engage the enemy
ist remain spectators of the battle,
nove from their present situation,
lisbandment and retreat would oc-
liscomfiture and loss of the whole
en commanded his master of horse,
er officers, to attack the left wing
y; whilst he, with a small part of
and houshold troops, engaged the

rs of the left and right wings of the
defeated and slain, a panic seized
of troops, and they began to give
Abyssinians, who had hitherto ab-
the engagement, seeing this, be-
d of their conduct, and attacked
ith great impetuosity. The whole
sh army having by this time joined,
s fought on both sides with great
l valour, till first the center, and
wing of the Moors was broken and
nd the right, which consisted prin-
rangers from Arabia, retired into
narrow valley, surrounded by high

and perpendicular rocks, which
with wood, and where they wer
and put to death. The rest of
troops were pursued and overta
number of them was slain; an
made prisoners, among whom wa
of Mara. This unfortunate mon
in the distinguished habit and ma
in which he had fought at the hea
and adorned with a collar and cl
enriched with precious stones, wa
of the whole army, brought bef
Abyssinia, who scarcely deigned
The royal prisoner also, with g
mity, observed a profound silence
having satisfied their curiosity wi
this unhappy prince, who was so
ject of their fear, the king comm
be hanged upon a tree, with all
in which he was arrayed. The q
on account of the drugs and enc
which she had poisoned the water
to be put to death by the soldiers,
to be given to the dogs.

After this, Amda Sion proceed
and lay waste the whole kingdom
king of that country, rendered di
certain and inevitable destructi
nions, marched hastily against t
monarch, whom he attacked wit
tion than his own situation and
of his enemy required; the
which was, that the unfortunate
feated and slain, and the greate
army put to the sword. The thir
brother of the late king of Adel,

gagement, convinced of the inferiority troops, and terrified at the approaching heir country, threw themselves at the he conqueror, implored his pardon and ess, and begged he would desist from vaste and destroying their unhappy king- Amda Sion, however, refused to com- their request, and ordered them to re- l wait the approach of his army.

unpromising interview being faithfully nicated to their mother by the young it was known, that unless the queen, of the late king of Adel's family, and ncipal persons in the kingdom, surren- nemselves immediately to the Abyssinian h, he would lay waste the province of om one extremity to the other. Those d been the promoters and advisers of the nsidering that they were in greater dan- n the royal family, persuaded them to event of another battle, and bound them- y mutual oaths and mutual promises to l die with each other. Accordingly, an e multitude assembled, consisting chiefly nen, women, and children, who were the , wives, and families of those that had fal- attle, and who, with the remnant of their men, were resolved to conquer or perish. king, perceiving this strange mixture of halted in great surprise and astonish- Unable to divine the reason for assem- ach an army, he sent a party of horse to e them, but every where found a stout stinate resistance. The soldiers being ovided with swords and shields, and the with clubs, poles, and stones, damped

the

the ardour of his troops, and comp
give way. The king, perceiving tl
became every minute more doubtfi
vourable, recalled the detachment
been sent from the army, and comr
to advance against the enemy.
time also, he made an extraordinar
his horse; but in vain: he every
people that willingly presented t
death, but who would not quit the
long as they possessed any power
defend themselves.

Conspicuous above the rest for h
graceful figure, and the many a
which he performed, the young ki
was every where seen encouraging
his voice and example, and preser
wherever Amda Sion appeared in
remarkable and destructive resist
young prince excited the attention
of Abyssinia, who, aiming an a
youthful hero, wounded him throug
of his neck, and he fell dead amon
foes. This sight immediately stru
with terror and dismay, who, be
selves to flight, were cut in piec
three Moorish soldiers escaped with
Amda Sion having ravaged and la
kingdom with fire and sword, and c
most brutal and unheard-of cruelt
into Abyssinia, where he died.

After the death of Amda Sion,
of several princes took place, of wi
A. D. is recorded worthy of notice.
1411. second was succeeded by
Zaara Jacob, who assumed

antine, and is considered by the Abys-
s another Solomon, and the model of
sovereign ought to be. During the
this prince, idolatry was thought a ca-
me, and all that were found guilty of
nce suffered accordingly. He issued a
ation declaring that every one who did
y an amulet on his right hand, contain-
e words, "I renounce the devil and all
ks for Jesus Christ our Lord," should
is personal estate, and be liable to cor-
unishment. Many criminals were con-
nd executed, and great severity was ex-

a Jacob divided the country into separate
nents, assigning to each the tax it should
what time, and in what manner, accord-
the situation and productions of every
e. During his reign several insurrections
ut in different parts of his dominions,
however, he had the address and ability
in a short time.

Zaara Jacob succeeded his son Bæda Ma-
ho, through the influence of his mother,
leavoured, but in vain, to share in the
ment of the kingdom during his father's
rom the reign of Judith, in the tenth
, the custom of confining the royal chil-
on the top of a mountain had been dis-
ed. Bæda Mariam, however, re- A. D.
he severity of that ancient law, 1468.
ested all his brethren, whom he
isoners to the lofty mountain of Geshen,
confines of Amhara and Begemder. Af-
s, he concluded a treaty of peace and
with the king of Adel, who had sent am-
bassadors

...parations made in his camp were
against Adel, but that he was resol
no longer the inroads and cruelties
bas.* He requested the king of
fore, to observe a strict neutrality
dors also arrived on the same errar
cali, to whom the same account wa
the same request made.

The Dobas finding that the king
mined utterly to extirpate them, an
was no possibility of avoiding destru
submission, adopted that line of
nounced Paganism, and were pardo
Mariam, however, resolved to chas
of Adel, who had not only discover
tion to the Dobas, but offered to assi
some of his best troops. The Abys
therefore, marched into that kingdo
command of the betwudet † Adber
expecting to find the Moors wholl
began to desol

ıave time to ravage the country.
ıediately ensued, which, from the
l of the soldiers, the equality of
s, and their long experience in
ıanner of fighting, was extremely
ıbstinate. Often on the point of
ited, the Moorish officers, whilst
retrieved their honour and cause
l personal exertions. At length
i of them were slain, and victory
avour of the Abyssinians. The
s on his march to join the be-
informed of this event, and ac-
no army now remained in Adel
ceep the field. Bæda Mariam,
ıg the means of rendering that
ıtary and dependant, was seized
his bowels, which occasioned his

vas the late king dead, than, as we
ɔy the annals of Abyssinia, a tu-
ɛting of the nobles took
queen Romana, with her
r, was brought from the
ıen, and the latter crowned with-
. For some years after this prince
hrone, the queen his mother, and
rincipal nobility, governed in his
ɛspotic sway. The king of Adel,
ies had been often ravaged and
the Abyssinian armies, omitted
r of conciliating the favour and
court. In this, however, he was
he incursions and cruelties of a

A. D. 1478.

peror that these were occasioned b
of religion in his dominions; and tl
nor the people might expect peac
lity, so long as the Romish faith
and promoted. It was impossible
convince his subjects, that circumc
observance of the sabbath could b
God; or that the Alexandrian
fasts and festivals, ought to give
of Rome; and that it would be r
prudent to relax in these points, w
part of the essentials of Christianit
mit them the performance of thei
and ceremonies.

These representations and remo
the desired effect on the mind of So
length, he yielded to their entreat
gated the severity of the edicts
issued against the Abyssinian faith.
patriarch was highly displeased w
cessions of the king; expostulatec
very unbecoming terms; and remi
that Uzziah was smitten by God
for presuming to infringe on the
The monarch, who at that time h
to attend to the representations o
account of a fresh insurrection w
peared in his dominions, only re
establishment of the Romish relig
sinia was not occasioned by the pr
jesuits, nor by the miracles they wr
formation of it, but merely by his
tion and free will.

The king's troops had been ov
feated by the insurgents, and his
pelled to seek their safety by flig

ıg collected a more numerous and powerful
', marched against the enemy, whom he at-
d with great fury, and obtained a complete
ry. After the combat, he traversed the
of battle with a melancholy air, accompa-
by the chief officers of his court, who thus
essed him: "Behold these thousands of
. They are neither Mahometans nor Gen-
nor enemies of Christianity, but your own
ls and subjects, and our blood and rela-
. Whether you conquer or be conquered,
plunge a sword into your own bosom.
e who made war against you, are consci-
of no wrong: they took up arms only to
d their ancient religion, which you are de-
s of obliging them to renounce, and to re-
the acceptance of doctrines which they can-
be persuaded to believe. What an abun-
e of blood has this unhappy change already
ed to be shed! and how much more will it
sion to be spilled, unless you allow your sub-
the free exercise of that religion which
received from their ancestors? Without
we shall never have rest; and you will
tly find yourself deprived of empire and of
le."

his pathetic remonstrance made a deep and
lible impression on the mind of the emperor,
was weary of the frequent wars and revolts
:h had recently taken place. It was also
rced by Basilides his son, by the empress,
by his other wives; and Socinios, at length,
prevailed on to issue an edict allowing li-
y of conscience, and restoring to the Abys-
ıns the religion of their forefathers. This
:ation caused inexpressible joy and rejoicing
among

among all ranks and degrees of laity cast the beads and trinket which the popish missionaries ha The clergy began to perform the the manner they had formerly nister the communion in both kin circumcision; and to renew the tion at the feast of Epiphany, nary pomp and exultation. I they chanted songs of thanksgivi one of which thus concluded: " glad; sing hallelujahs; the she are delivered from the wolves of

Though the king's edict resto nian church to its pristine state clude the Romish priests from t of their religion. But the latter odious throughout the empire, t easily seized several of their n newly erected churches. At thi occasioned either by grief or di quence of the fatigue to which posed by war, insurrection, an ther, as has been believed, by p fell sick. During his illness, the dez endeavoured to excite the d the desponding monarch, by repr that his forbearance and inactiv duce a civil war in his dominio Alexandrians and Romanists. creet and ill-timed intimation, tended to induce the king to rev favour of toleration, Socinios r can I do? I have no longer a authority?" He died in the R the age of sixty-one, in the twen

n ensued. Naod pursued the asto-
fleeing enemy, and retook all the
id cattle that Maffudi was carrying
Advancing towards the frontiers of
as met by the ambassadors of the
country, to whom he granted peace,
n that all the Abyssinians found in
ns, and taken by Maffudi, should be
hich was readily promised and per-

eath of Naod, whose prudent and vi-
n suspended for a time the fate of
David the Third, son of the last
nd as yet an infant, under the
id direction of queen Helena, A.D. 1508.
e throne of Abyssinia. About
the Turks threatened to subject to
ion both the kingdoms of Adel and
and would probably have effected
se, had it not been for the Portu-
n they found strongly established in
h was also their principal object.
was sensible that this was not a pro-
a woman to reign, nor, which was
same, for having a king who was a
her ambition induced her to prefer
governing to the visible necessities
of her country.

emergency, therefore, she was no
med of the power and success of the
in India, than she determined to re-
sistance of their king Don Emanuel,
into a treaty of friendship and alli-
at prince. That she might succeed
n her design, she made choice of an
nerchant, named Matthew, to be her

ness, who is the head and father o
church."

To this letter of the patriarch,
plied, "that the breach between th
and Romanists was not so much o
the disputations which had been hel
the nature of Christ, as to their de
the cup in the communion; changi
and festivals; presuming to re-baptis
selytes, and to re-ordain their priest
cons." He concluded by insisting o
mediate departure for Fremona, and c
them to surrender all the fire-arms of v
were possessed, into the hands of an offi
he sent for that purpose. The patriarc
that all he could say or do had no eff
obliged to comply with the orders of
narch, and to depart with the other miss
They were escorted by Paul, the emper
phew, who was commanded to guar
through the deserts, but who, instead of
ing, would have plundered and robbed t
all their valuables, had not the Portugues
two or three of his men, and compelled t
to seek their safety in flight. At lengt
much fatigue, danger, and loss, they r
Fremona in a very miserable condition,
they were scarcely allowed time to refre
cruit themselves before another order fr
king was received, which enjoined them i
leave his dominions and to embark for
Bosilides was informed that the R mis
had sent to the viceroy of Goa
of Port[illegible] requesting an arm
[illegible] Abyssinia with
[illegible] their

the conquest of India, finding it
expel the Portuguese out of that
lved to attempt the conversion of
f all the inhabitants of Abyssinia,
nism, by the power of the sword.
officers in Arabia and the king of
their forces, and prepared for in-
byssinian territories. In the mean
assembled his troops, and marched
confines of his kingdom, where
Mahometan army, an engagement
hich the forces of the Abyssinian
defeated, and four thousand men,
test part of the nobility, were left
ield of battle.

n of disasters and defeats followed,
rtunate inhabitants of Abyssinia
to the greatest misery and distress;
by the sword, the famine, and the
length David was obliged to retire
the dry and inaccessible mountain
, where, blockaded by his enemies,
brave and virtuous, abandoned and
his own subjects, he fell a prey to
isfortune, and died in that horrid
e forty-second year of his age, and
rd of his reign.

who succeeded his father A. D.
hird, was young at the time 1540.
ion to the throne, and found
n circumstances that required the
rudence of a wise and experienced
though Claudius was young, he was
a graceful and affable deportment,
ed to him the affections of the
as expert in all warlike exercises, and

federacy with pope and const
victory was followed by several
affairs of Abyssinia began to we
plexion.

Claudius endeavoured to ob
of the Abyssinian clergy; bu
thwarted by the Portuguese, wh
a great ascendancy at court, e
women devoted to catholicism.
ever, contrived to manage both
gion with so much policy and
without abandoning the abuna
catholic patriarch, sent thither b
Christopher, the commander o
guese army, which had been dis
Claudius against the Turks and
he could effect a junction with t
sight of the Moorish troops. T
was under the command of C
Adel, consisted of one thousand

ere discomfited, and Don Christopher
he hands of the Moors, who put him
. The Moorish army, however, was
r defeated by Claudius, and Gragné,
mander, slain.

ount of the dissensions which prevailed
me between the Abyssinians and Por-
relative to religious matters, the king
necessary to separate them, and to ba-
atholic patriarch. Claudius had march-
my towards Adel, when he received a
from Nur, informing him, that though
as no more, there was still a governor
eady to revenge his death, and to shed
of the princes of Abyssinia. An en-
accordingly followed, in which Clau-
killed, fighting bravely at the head of
s. It is to be observed, that the po-
lance which this prince held between
religions, inclined no farther towards
lics than protection, as he always pro-
creed of his ancestors. The virtues
ies of Claudius rank him among the
ings.

udius died without leaving any chil-
brother Minas succeeded to the A.D.
nd found the kingdom in nearly 1559.
confusion as at the death of his
vid. Minas did not conduct himself
the Portuguese, or the jesuit mission-
accompanied them, with that degree
ce and equity which had characterised
of his brother: he deprived them of
which they had before possessed; de-
the free intercourse of their religion;
shed their proselytes with great severity.

confined, to be brought [illegible]
the reign of Hannes, these fo
wholly unnoticed and forgotter
however, to which these unhap
consigned, proved their greates
vantage: for punishment gene
quiries after particular prince
sages, or visits, at the instance
commonly the forerunners of tl
of the amputation of limbs.

The sight of so many nobl
advanced in years, others in tl
youth, and a few but yet in
who were all in mean attire, a
made such an impression on tl
nerous mind of Yasous, that h
Nor was his behaviour to them
engaging. To the aged he pa
and respect; those in the flow
treated with a kind and friendly
on the children he bestowed c

persecutions which his father had
inst the missionaries and their con-
permitted them to live in peace, with-
them injury or shewing them favour.
of Portugal offered to assist him with
ich he did not accept; but he re-
iat prince, and the viceroy of Goa,
im workmen who might be able to
n, to manufacture gunpowder, and to
words and other weapons for his sol-
elec was a prudent and cautious com-
nd generally successful against his
He intended his nephew Zadenghel
uccessor, who was a prince possessed
every virtue, and was arrived at a
e for governing. On his death-bed,
at the instigation of his queen and
nobles, who wished to rule during a
he caused his son Jacob, a boy of
s of age, to be acknowledged by the
ut when Melec found his end ap-
, he changed his sentiments once more,
ring, as he said to his nobles who had
around him, the interest and welfare
gdom to the private affection he bore
atisfied the choice he had before made
hew, and expired.

asons, however, which the late king as-
r the choice of Zadinghel, in- A.D.
art of the principal persons of 1595.
to reject that prince, and es-
cause of Jacob. Accordingly, a con-
as formed to change the order of suc-
nd Zadenghel was seized and carried
to Dek, a large island in the lake
here he was kept for some time, till he
contrived

patriarch Mendez, and his associates, r
that proper persons should be sent into
nia, in conjunction with them, who sh
deavour to induce the king of that co
send an embassy into France; and, on
nagement of this political affair, they
their hopes of replacing themselves in t
tion they formerly enjoyed, and of agai
ing measures for the conversion of that
The French king undertook the prot
this mission, with all the readiness th
desired; but the pope, who consider
haughtiness, implacability, and impru
the loss of Abyssinia, appointed the su
the Franciscans his legate to the Ab
court. The second attempt, however,
verting Abyssinia by an embassy, whic
to have cost a considerable expence, w
nated by the death of the unfortunate
Roule, who is said to have been mur
Sinnar, through the instigations of
formed Franciscans, and their brethre
Holy Land.

Yasous had a mistress whom he
loved, and whose death he so much
that his queen persuaded her son, Tecla
nout, that the king intended to depri
the crown, and to place David, the son
Kedust, his mistress, on the throne of
nia. Fired with resentment, the you
who had shewn early signs of wisdom,
lents for governing, collected a numer
in which he was assisted by the queen
ther. A message was then sent to t
"that after so long a reign, and so mu
shed, it would be proper that Yasous

and esteem of his people, he was
the arts and intrigues of the jesuits
the catholic religion; and, without
ufficient prudence, he issued a pro-
prohibiting the religious observation
s, or the Jewish sabbath. This sud-
dent measure excited the resentment
ation of the Abyssinians; and every
id the seeds of ambition and rebel-
in his heart, pretended that on ac-
s love and attachment to the true
t religion, he was displeased at the
Zadenghel. Za Selassè, in particu-
ditious assemblies with the monks,
taught to believe that the Alexan-
was now totally rejected and dis-
that no other religion but that of the
Rome would thenceforth be tolerated.
, a man of a wicked and corrupt life,
my to the king, was easily prevailed
olve the soldiers of Zadenghel from
ance, and to declare the monarch ex-
ated and accursed, together with all
should support and favour him.

nean time, the province of Gojam,
extremely hostile to the tenets and
of the church of Rome, declared
e king; which was no sooner known,
elassè hastened thither to encourage
he insurgents. Zadenghel being de-
nany of his troops, became sensible of
of the abuna's excommunication, but
ss proceeded against his rebellious
ith the few soldiers that still remained
him. The engagement that followed
y and desperate. The king, who had
become

...derers intended to
king on the throne, who was th
A. D. Haimanout; but those wh
1706. ticipated in the assassinati
Tifilis, or Theophilus, the
sous. This prince arrested the qu
brothers, who had put Yasous the
The queen was hanged on a tr
her two brothers were thrust thro
with swords. Those also who
against the late king, suffered
After fighting and conquering t
some insurgents, who had appear
nions, he returned to Gondar, an
mations of his soldiers and subjec
scarcely entered the capital, wher
ill of a fever, of which he died.

It was feared by the people ...
king from ...

d rebuked him for the disorder and
oline observable among the troops,
imperial standard, and joined the
inios, seizing the opportunity when
ces were encamped in a disadvan-
tion, attacked and defeated them,
as at once deprived of his crown

as now universally acknow- A.D.
g, and commenced his reign 1605.
ng the abuses, and repairing
hich a long and bloody war had
He did not retaliate on his ene-
injuries which he had suffered, but
ned every one, received all without
eflections, and endeavoured to gain
and support by acts of lenity and
In order that he might attach the
to his interest, and make them to
ely on him, he favoured the Romish
thereby gave offence to the Abyssi-
There was at that time among
tries in Abyssinia, a jesuit called
a man of great talents and address,
ceived the idea of subduing that
e pope. According to the system
bretliren that preceded him had
ed, he was of opinion that his mis-
be accompanied and supported by a
f troops.
uated himself into the favour of the
whom he obtained a grant of terri-
ng secured the confidence of Soci-
ced that monarch, by flattering his
eck the authority and ambition of
powerful in his kingdom, who re-
strained

council, and directed it? You th
answered in the affirmative,
" his holiness was the head of th
the successor of St. Peter, a
upon earth." These words v
tered, when the whole assem
them to be stoned; and they
put to death.

David called another con
clergy, in which was debate
Christ. A difference of opini
king argued that he is perfect
man, and by the union one Ch
is composed of a precious s
Babery, not consubstantial w
rived from his mother. The al
contended that he is one Go
alone, united to a body perfe

exandria, though they differed in
ons, were cordially agreed in the
ting ecclesiastical dominion and
ie ruins of monarchy and civil
effecting a total subordination to
St. Mark or St. Peter.

n time, a person appeared, who
king Jacob, and pretended that
d from the battle in which that
slain, and that his face was so de-
arked with the wounds he had re-
engagement, that it was proper
to veil it from sight. In order,
promote the deception, he con-
he Abyssinian crown, which co-
ead and both cheeks. All Tigre
in this impostor, whom they con-
r true and lawful sovereign, and
imself at the head of a numerous
s, descended from the mountains,
ad been encamped, and advanced
n. Here he experienced several
eats from the governor of Tigre,
Socinios; after which he retired
sible retreats. At length, how-
those who had joined the impos-
ced, by the promise of pardon, to
etended Jacob, and to cut off his
ey sent to the king.

, seizing the opportunity which
l disorders offered, attacked the
oops commanded by the king in
engagement was bloody and ob-
ictory was for a long time doubt-
length, the Gallas were every

where put to the rout, and the wan
prevented Socinios from destroying t
army, which would have been the
sequence of a vigorous pursuit, throu
try where every inhabitant was a
southern Gallas, being informed of t
their countrymen, marched into
burned and destroyed the churches a
and put to death all that fell into t
The king, who was soon apprized
proach, and of the excesses they
posted his army in an advantageou
The Gallas were entirely surroun
Abyssinian troops, and every soul c
rished.

The first splendid conquest of F
suit, was that over Sella Christos, th
brother, who publicly abjured the
faith, and embraced the catholic
that prince was sincere in his co
know not, but great numbers of the
grandees were induced by his exam
rest to conform to the same cre
proved a zealous proselyte, and th
part of the Romish church in Ab
ral circumstances, however, dis
ries the odium with which his m
regarded by his subjects, and the e
cuity of eradicating the ancient, a
ducing the Romish religion. He t
dered several conferences and dis
be held between the Portuguese
nians, relative to the controverted p
trine; but finding the latter obstin
to be convinced, he [illegible]

ubjects to maintain the existence of
ture in Jesus Christ.
ree, followed by others in favour of
church, alarmed the whole empire,
lly the clergy. The abuna, who had
, hastened to court to assert his dig-
reatened all with excommunication
ted and favoured the Romish doc-
ding himself supported by Emana
other brother of Socinios, he carried
into execution, and affixed the sen-
gates of one of the churches of the
mp; and the king issuing another
n similar to the former, he anathe-
inios, and wrote circular letters to
defence of the ancient faith. These
the abuna increased the general dis-
inst the king and the Romish mis-
nd Julius, the son-in-law of Socinios,
take up arms in defence of the an-
n, and to persecute the catholic con-
re, of which he was governor.
, informed of these transactions, com-
abuna and Peter Paez to repair to
l camp, that the doubts and incre-
e one might be removed by the ar-
d persuasions of the other. Both
injunctions of the monarch; but the
accompanied by such a multitude
nd nuns, as greatly exceeded the
mber; all of whom protested they
er die, than forsake the religion of
hers, and on their knees requested
g would not persevere in these inno-
he answer of Socinios, however, was
ted to excite hopes of his amend-

had been consecrated bishops
ply his place in case of nece
received with the greatest den
fection and respect. Nothin
pompous than the ceremony, i
summated not only the union c
church, but also the submission
and all his court to the see of R

The day appointed for the
these rites being arrived, the
son, the viceroys, governors, an
empire, assembled in the grand
heard an elaborate discourse, del
dez, on the supremacy of the ch
of Rome. This being finished,
was given to the king, who falli
before the patriarch, took
"We the sul

by that prelate, impatient of termi-
e war, and persuaded that, on account
ng son-in-law to the king, no violence
e offered him, he boldly proceeded
the forces of Socinios, and advanced
is tent, attended only by seven per-
t he was killed, just as he was about
with an intention of slaying the mo-
His few followers suffered the same
this catastrophe of their leader in-
army to disperse, and endeavour to
nselves by flight. In the pursuit of
vever, the old abuna lost his life; and
ion seemed effectually terminated.

s then issued an edict forbidding the
of the Abyssinian rites, which caused
erment among the people, and some
postulations. An insurrection was
Jonael, viceroy of Begemder, who soon
mself at the head of a considerable
rces, that followed him to some of the
ntains on the frontiers, where he was
ed by the Gallas, whom he had en-
assist him. From thence he sent to
and demanded the total expulsion of
. Socinios immediately marched his
wards the mountains, on which the
as posted, and many of the insurgents
their leader and joining the king, Jo-
to the Gallas, his confederates, by
was put to death.

s having also quelled another revolt,
abjured the Abyssinian religion, and
that of Rome. Paez, having received
confession, and public renunciation of
ndrian faith, died soon after, before

a jesuit, named Mendez, who
panied by nineteen of his brethren,
had been consecrated bishops, in
ply his place in case of necessity.
received with the greatest demons
fection and respect. Nothing c
pompous than the ceremony, in w
summated not only the union of t
church, but also the submission o
and all his court to the see of Ro

The day appointed for the p
these rites being arrived, the ki
son, the viceroys, governors, and
empire, assembled in the grand ha
heard an elaborate discourse, deli
dez, on the supremacy of the chu
of Rome. This being finished, t
was given to the king, who fallin
before the patriarch, took the fo
" We the sultan Sequed, empero

of St. Peter, and that he possesses the
wer and the same authority over the
hristian church; and we promise and
ie and sincere obedience to the holy fa-
an the eighth, and to his successors,
ect ourselves and our empire to his and
. So help us God, and his holy evan-

s formula, which was complete and sa-
, all swore that were present; the of-
iests, and monks, according to their se-
lers or conditions. The ceremony was
ith a speech by Sella Christos, who,
ith zeal, after repeating the oath pre-
drew his sword, and uttered these words:
is past cannot be recalled; but those
not perform their duty shall be judged
vord." After this declaration, they all
legiance to the prince Basilides, whom
caused to be acknowledged as his suc-
nd the immediate heir of the crown.
istos, still hurried on by his zeal for the
added a clause, or qualification, to the
mula, and which was much commended
esuits. "I swear," said he, "to obey
faithful subject, so long as he shall
, defend, and favour the holy catholic
at if he shall fail in this, I will be his
greatest enemy." Socinios also com-
that all the ladies of the court should
same oath the day following, which was
gly done.

ing, however, experienced a greater de-
resistance from the clergy and people,
ld neither be induced by threats, punish-
ior the most flattering promises, to sub-
mit

crucifixes, and images in relief; fession; and other practices of an nature, were what chiefly gave off the frightened ecclesiastics were monasteries and convents, and seek tranquillity among the mountains, manded a magnificent and stately erected for the habitation of the his companions. He also ordered thedral to be constructed; but as the form of a cross, it gave offence sinians, who had hitherto been ac churches of a circular form.

Two missionaries, who had n number of converts to the Cathol extreme parts of Tigre, were mas people. That kingdom being visit by a plague of locusts, the Portugu the judgment to the murder of the and the Abyssinians, to the perse

be hanged like a common malefactor,
id of his camp. What, however, was
rigorous and severe, the sister of Tecla
entenced to suffer the same ignominious
r having, as was pretended, secretly fa-
hat revolt. All the prayers and en-
n her behalf availed nothing; and it
gular and remarkable circumstance for
to be hung in Ethiopia, especially for
of her rank and condition. This spec-
refore, excited the dread and horror of
e court, and particularly irritated the
x.
er that he might firmly establish his
s, and promote the interest of the church
, the patriarch, on his part, acted with
est rigour and the greatest zeal. The
ans were rebaptized, their priests re-
, and the schismatics, who had been bu-
he Catholic churches, were ordered to
erred, that those sacred edifices might
filed by them. The patriarch, however,
nvolved in a quarrel with the emperor's
, a lewd princess, who, though she had
bands living, cohabited with a lover,
e pretended to be desirous of marrying:
purpose she solicited the patriarch to
r a dispensation, which he refusing, the
became incensed at the conduct of Men-
employed all her influence in injuring
he excited other women to espouse her
ttered her father, and attacked him with
ances and complaints.
ll revolts and disasters also happening
is time, the Alexandrians, who had re-
ined ground at court, informed the em-
peror

fortune, Michael was, at length, obli[illegible] refuge in Gondar, which was besi[illegible] enemy and taken. The king, who [illegible] companied the ras, continued to take share in the government, no party [illegible] contented with him; on the contrary the rebel chiefs waited on him separa[illegible] acknowledged him as his sovereign.

The unfortunate Michael was inte[illegible] very severely respecting the cruelty and [illegible] of his former conduct; and was soo[illegible] carried prisoner to Begemder. He was t[illegible] able and experienced general that ever ap[illegible] in Abyssinia. We subjoin the character [illegible] wonderful man, as given by Mr. Bruce [illegible] was an eye witness of many of the transa[illegible] which happened in that country during [illegible] period. "The old man was sitting on a [illegible] with his white hair dressed in short curls. [illegible] appeared to be thoughtful, but not displea[illegible] his face was lean, his eyes quick and vivid, [illegible] sore from the exposure of the weather. [illegible] seemed to be about six feet in height, th[illegible] his lameness rendered it difficult to guess [illegible] any degree of accuracy or precision. H[illegible] was perfectly free from constraint, and [illegible] French call *[illegible]*. His capacity and [illegible] standing appeared in his conversation. He [illegible] little; but every look conveyed a sentiment [illegible] he had no occasion for any other language.

Since the period of Mr. [illegible] [illegible] has recovered us with any [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] our history of this country must [illegible] with the [illegible] has recorded.

* Travels to [illegible] the Source of the N[illegible]

CHAP. V.

Kingdoms adjacent to Abyssinia.

EFORE we commence the description and history of these parts, it may not be im- er or unnecessary to observe, that several doms on the confines of Abyssinia, along coasts of the Red Sea, are placed on our s, but concerning which geographers have us little or nothing besides their names relative situation. When these people are arrassed with any vacancy, occasioned by errors or negligence of travellers, they fill he void with provinces of their own creation, h they erect into states and kingdoms. y raise mountains, plant forests, dig out for rivers, scatter huts or tents through the n, and people the cities and country with in- tants. After them comes the historian, who rms us of the manners, customs, and re- on of those nations; but who also adds, and s with truth, that these things are very little wn.

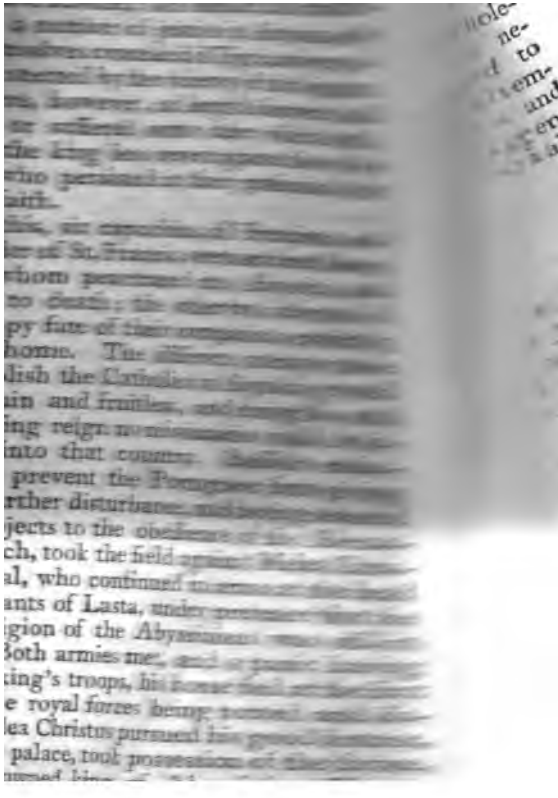
SECTION I.

Bali and Dancali.

'HE small kingdom of Bali was formerly ject and tributary to Abyssinia, but has since olted and maintained its independence. It here that Nur, king of Zeila, attacked and ated Claudius, the Abyssinian monarch, who

was

...p in the communion; c
and festivals; presuming to re-
selytes, and to re-ordain their
cons." He concluded by insis
mediate departure for Fremona
them to surrender all the fire-a
were posse-sed, into the hands o
he sent for that purpose. The
that all he could say or do ha
obliged to comply with the o
march, and to depart with the o
They were escorted by Paul,
plow, who was commanded
through the deserts, but who, i
ing, would have plundered anc
all their valuab'es, had not the
two or three of his men, and co
to seek their safety in
which [illegible]



was thereby deprived of his
In Bali are neither towns nor
few villages scattered throug
uncultivated territory, which
cruel and barbarous Gallas, o
live in the vicinity of the s
Mahometanism, and subsist
plunder. The prince of thi
and powerful, and obliges the
which lies opposite to his d
him one half of the custon
Bali abounds with gold and
Hawash crossing these terri
course eastward, and loses i
deserts of Adel.

The kingdom of Dancali i
east by Adel and the myrrh c
north by the Red Sea. It is a
trict, of small extent, and
vated nor inhabited. The kin
but always in strict alliance a
the Abyssinian monarch, to wl
The inhabitants are black.
cepting the Bay of Bilur, wl
13 degrees 3 minutes. When
flourished, the revenue of th
principally arose from furn
transporting merchandise to
Africa. Their commerce is n
carriage of bricks of solid or
is dug from pits in their own c
in Abyssinia instead of silver
carrying them from the sea-coa
and burning deserts, at the risk
by the Gallas, they deliver th
market in the high land, for a

le profit. There are only two small rivers of water in the whole kingdom; and these are sible above ground in the hot and dry sea- During the periodical rains, they are much n by the water which falls down the sides mountains and the high lands of Abys- and then run with a current into the sea. vater of the wells is brackish and unwhole- and never used except in absolute ne- ; and sometimes they are obliged to the country, in quest of water for them- , and pasture for their miserable goats and The inhabitants are idle and indigent, istrustful of all Europeans, but especially Portuguese.

SECTION II.

Ajan.

IIS country is bounded on the north by lph of Babelmandel; on the east by the Ocean; on the south by Zanguebar; and west by Abyssinia and regions unknown: nds from the 12th degree of north latitude equator. The situation sufficiently indi- that the climate is excessively hot; and in places the country is a barren and sandy ; especially on the east, where it pro- neither corn nor fruits, and only wild ani- But in the northern parts the soil is fertile, he people are numerous and commercial. ; this part of the coast, the inhabitants are y white, with long black hair, but assume re tawny appearance towards the south. edouin Arabs constitute the most numerous body

body of the natives; but there are
who live and intermarry with t
reckoned a very brave and warlike
latter carry on a considerable tr
former, which consists of gold, s
and ivory, that they bring fro
whither they repair for the sake of

Being Mahometans or Bedouins
less hostile to Europeans than
sinians, and carefully guard the
that country, lest foreigners shou
to defend that empire from their
depredations.

This tract is divided into sev
kingdoms; the most considerable
Adel, Magadoxa, and Brava.

SECTION III.

Adel.

THE kingdom of Adel is bo
north by the straits of Babelmande
extent from east to west is supp
hundred and sixty leagues; and
north to south about seventy.
veral cities, the principal of which
Barbora. The most considerabl
eastern coast is Asum, which abou
visions and other refreshments for
has no haven. Cape Guardafui i
be the Aromata of Ptolemy, and
to the island of Zocotra.

Zeila is situated in a spacious ba
east of the mouth of the strai[illegible] of
in 11 degrees 10 minutes of north

grees 35 minutes of eastern longitude from
on. It is supposed to be the Avarita of
my, and retains something of its ancient
leur. It is a regular and populous place, and
s on a lucrative trade, the haven being spa-
and commodious. The merchandise, which
ried into the Abyssinian empire, and also
which is consumed in the kingdom of Adel,
through this town, the revenues of which
nsiderable. The soil in the neighbourhood
ila is sandy and barren, and all the fresh
is fetched from a distance of two miles.
rbora stands at the bottom of a bay, on an
of the same name; and has always been
mmercial rival of Zeila, and is much fre-
ed by merchants. This place was plun-
and burnt by the Portuguese fleet, who
ted to find considerable spoil, but were
pointed. The island is fertile, and pro-
plenty of corn, fruits, and cattle, a great
f which is exported into other countries.
e principal trade of Adel consists of gold,
elephants' teeth, frankincense, and ne-
; which being carried to the port of Zeila,
artered for cotton-cloth, silk, linen, and
s personal decorations.
e Adelites are stout and warlike, and fight
wonderful intrepidity against the Abys-
s, as well on account of their religion, as
es of plunder; the former being all Ma-
tans, and the latter infinitely their inferiors
lour and discipline; and for several cen-
the Abyssinian monarchs had no other
ies so powerful and inveterate. That which
alarmed and terrified the Adelite princes
heir allies, was the submission of the Abys-

...opean powers had co
these last had sent a great reinforce
and arms, they would have found
land on any part of the coast, an
practicable to penetrate into the em
sinia.

This kingdom was founded by
princes of the imperial family of Ab
having escaped from the rocky pris
these unfortunate persons were c
refuge in the province of Adel, a
the protection of the king of Zeila,
conversion to Mahometanism, g
daughter in marriage. After the
father in law, he united both into
Being an apostate and persecuted
motives for entertaining a mortal
former countrymen; and his ha
to his descend-

rrival. Accordingly, sixty of their com- having left the fleet, and gained the shore oat, landed in a creek near the port of where they were ready to perish with heat rought. One of the king's commanders sed, that if they would deliver up their he would supply them with victuals and other necessary. Their condition being rate, they hesitated not to accept the pro- ; which they had no sooner done, than they immediately put to death.

e Portuguese commander ordered his sol- to go on board some light vessels which ged to the fleet, with all possible secrecy spatch, and at the head of six hundred men went on shore, during the night, and the avenues by which the enemy might vour to make their escape. The baharn- * marched directly against the Portuguese, om he was shot ; and a number of Turks ame to his assistance were immediately cut ces. The discomfited king no sooner reco- from his panic, than he collected all his orces, and those of his allies, and resolved struct the passage of the Portuguese army gh his dominions. But whilst these pre- ions were making to impede the progress of nemy, they had reached the borders of sinia, and were met by the queen, who to escort and accompany them on their h. Granha, however, sent to inform them, he territory through which they had passed

* That country round by Cape Guardafui, and south s Sofala, along the Indian ocean, was long governed officer called bahamagash, which implies *king of the st.*" *Bruce.*

belonged to him; that, if they would con
enlist in his service, they should be recei
friends and allies; but if they refused his c
he commanded them immediately to depa
dominions, otherwise they would be consid
as invaders, and put to death.

This haughty message provoked an answe
the Portuguese commander, which expresse
contempt of the king of Adel, and a derision
his offers and threats. An engagement, the
fore, ensued, in which both sides fought wi
great bravery, and both generals were wounde
This incident proved favourable to the Por
guese, whom the Moorish army greatly outnu
bered, and had surrounded on all sides. T
fall of their general, and the necessity of his
tiring to a neighbouring hill, where his wou
might be dressed, disconcerted the Adelites
much, that they faced about, and retreated
their commander.

Granha was no sooner recovered of his wou
than he marched to attack the Portuguese w
the flower of his horse and foot, which amoun
to twice their former number. The onset
furious and dreadful on both sides; but the
of the enemy's artillery did such execution,
the Moorish troops began to retire; and
Portuguese having strewed the ground wi
quantity of gunpowder, they were greatly
noyed in their retreat. A great number o
Moors had their legs and feet terribly scor
and burnt; and being wholly ignorant o
ance, they ascribed this dire effect to the e
of some internal power, which contributed
complete their confusion and ruin. The fi
attle was covered with the dead and the d

length, both the Moorish horse and foot
y; and Granha retreated to a neigh-
hill, and left the enemy once more in
i of victory.

ia having lost a great number of men
ses in this defeat, applied to the grand
for a reinforcement of both, and, the
fectually to accomplish his purpose, he
nsiderable quantity of gold to the Porte,
ebid the bashaw, who then commanded
ighbouring government. In the mean
remained on the hill, with the broken
of his army; whilst the Portuguese, in
avoid a surprise, gained with much
the summit of a high and rocky moun-
ere they fortified their camp.

oner had the king of Adel received the
ments from Zebid, which consisted of
red Turks, two hundred horsemen, and
s of cannon, than he resolved to attack
y's entrenchments; whilst, on the other
proposal was made in a council of the
ese troops, and approved by much the
majority, to surprise the Moorish camp
he night, as the only expedient left for
out of their territories. The Portu-
mmander, however, would not accede
oposal, and this refusal occasioned the
eat of his troops, and the loss of his

Abyssinian monarch having soon after
ne few Portuguese that escaped, was re-
attempt the recovery of some of the
s which had been conquered by Granha.
of Adel, on his part, made every pro-
necessary preparation for a vigorous
opposition.

difficulty gained the summit of th
perceived it abandoned with prec
the inhabitants, who had left a quar
and provisions, which they found to
The stratagem was soon detected,
visions were destroyed. During th
encamped on the summit, and the
a full view of the Moorish army,
vanced to the foot of the mountain,
them with curses and menaces.

These threats intimidated the
and his unwarlike followers, who
have avoided an engagement, had t
obliged to follow the Portuguese
scent, lest they should be deprived o
liaries. Granha perceiving their a
peared at the head of his troops, m
stately horse, with
Port

subjection several other valuable pro-
which Granha had wrested from him.
st he was thus successfully employed, a
was brought him from the newly elected
Adel, advising him not to be too much
ith his victory, since he would find his
r able and ready to revenge the death of
monarch. This was no sooner made
o the king of Abyssinia, than he march-
roops with the greatest secrecy and dis-
nd attacking the enemy before they ex-
is approach, a furious and obstinate en-
nt ensued, in which the Moorish army
ated and put to flight, and the Adelite
h lost his life. Of other kings of Adel,
has recorded nothing worthy of notice.

SECTION IV.

Magadoxa and Brava.

next considerable kingdom in the dis-
Ajan is Magadoxa, which lies contiguous
, and extends to the coast of Zanguebar.
pital of this kingdom obtains the same
nd is situated at the head of a large bay,
by the mouth of a river, which has an
inundation similar to that of the Nile.
er fertilises the soil, which produces great
ies of wheat, barley, and a variety of
and the country abounds with oxen,
sheep, and other animals.
city of Magadoxa is a place of great com-
being much resorted to from the coun-
Arabia, India, and many other parts;
hence the merchants import cotton, silk,
stuffs,

...ous superstitions. The ki
profess Mahometanism. The
in their complexions, from whit
but they all speak the Arabic tor
stout and warlike, and make use
rows and lances.

On the southern extremity of
republic of Brava, which, fo
know to the contrary, is an un
tinent. It was founded by sev
thers, who fled thither to avoi
Lacah, a petty sovereign of A
is a most delightful and conv
being a narrow country, confi
by a river, or rather by two
same stream.

This republic is of very incon
and its chief depende
is situ

tes, elected from the principal families of
unders, to whom the dispensation of jus-
nd the management of public affairs are
y committed. The natives are chiefly Ma-
ans, but under the protection of the Portu-
government, to which they pay a small
l tribute.

CHAP. VI.

ingdoms and States on the Coast of Zanguebar.

IIS coast is called Zanguebar, from an
Arabic word signifying *black*; so that it
ts the *Coast of the Negroes*; the inhabitants
ieral having dark complexions, and their
urled and woolly. It occupies a large ex-
f the eastern coast of Africa, reaching
the equator to twenty-three degrees of
latitude, and from thirty-four to forty de-
of east longitude from London. It is
led on the north by Ajan, on the east by
idian Ocean, on the south by the country
Hottentots, and on the west by parts un-
n; and is divided into several kingdoms
ates, whose names are Melinda, Mombasa,
a, Mosambique, Sofola, Monomotapa,
mugi, and Caffraria; most of which are
ary to the Portuguese, though governed by
black princes.

is tract of country would be intolerably hot
arren, did not the annual rains and refresh-
eezes from the sea, with the numerous ri-

vers

vers that intersect it, serve to coo
fertilize the soil. Vasco de Gama,
admiral, first discovered the coast o
He had been appointed to the co
fleet intended to attempt the dis
East Indies, and falling in with
was favourably received by the
Melinda, whose kingdom we sh
sider.

SECTION I.

Melinda.

MELINDA, according to the
geographical divisions of the earth
at the equator, and extends to t
manci, between the third and fou
south latitude. The coast for the
dangerous and difficult of access,
rocks and shelves, and the sea t
certain seasons of the year. The
ever, in general, is rich and fert
duces almost every necessary of
wheat and rice, which are import
parts. It likewise abounds with a
of fruit-trees, roots, and plants.
are exquisite; and the citron-tree
profusion, that their odoriferous
perpetual fragrance to the air.
great plenty of venison, game, ox

The city of Melinda is pleasant
a beautiful plain, surrounded by
orchards, full of the most delicio
especially citrons and oranges. T
made of stone, with flat roofs, n

nd stately, and some truly superb in their
l appearance, and all of them richly fur-
; the inhabitants being chiefly opulent
nts, who carry on a considerable trade in
opper, quicksilver, ivory, and drugs. The
t inconvenience attending this capital, is
stance of the anchorage, on account of
ks and shelves, which render the access
lt and dangerous.

inhabitants are an assemblage of people
ious complexions, black, swarthy, tawny,
ite. The women are chiefly of an olive
. Their dress is remarkably elegant and
g, and consists of fine silk robes, fastened
them with rich gold or silver girdles:
have also veils which cover their heads,
old collars about their necks. The men
a kind of turban, wrought with silk and
some are covered from the waist down-
with silk and cotton stuffs, and have their
nd feet entirely bare. Others wear short
-cloaks, with swords and daggers hand-
y ornamented. Every one is accoutred
a shield and weapons, which consist of a
nd arrows, scymitar, and javelin; in the
which they are very expert, being esteemed
g the most valiant and intrepid people on
frican coast. The inhabitants of Melinda
id to be courteous and obliging; free from
and dissimulation; sociable among them-
, and friendly to strangers.

eir religion is variously described by au-
, some representing it as Mahometanism,
thers as Paganism; and it appears there
eople of both persuasions. The Bedouins
superstitious and ignorant race of idolaters;

and

or chapels in the capital; b
themselves with the free exer
ligion, without compelling th
come proselytes.

The government is monarchi
is held in such veneration an
subjects, that whenever he stirs
he is carried with great pomp i
on the shoulders of some of t
of the kingdom. As he pas
streets, incense and other perfu
before him by a number of ladi
him with songs of praise, ac
several kinds of musical instrun
sets out on any particular ex
other public occasions, he app
a stately horse, with a nume
tended by a great multitude of
rend the air with their acclamatio
and soothsayers then sacrifice a

e appearance of a religious sanction for what-
er measures he may think proper to adopt and
ursue.

The kings of Melinda generally merit the
nfidence, loyalty, and affection of their people,
y their constant application to public affairs;
eir vigilance over their ministers, governors,
d other magistrates; their assiduity and at-
ntion in hearing and receiving the complaints
their injured subjects; their impartial ad-
inistration of justice; and their severity to
rsons of every description, who endeavour to
islead them by fraud or artifice.

When any complaint is presented to the king,
e plaintiff is detained till the defendant, who
immediately summoned to appear, has heard
s accusation and made his defence; and, the
atter being investigated with the greatest at-
ntion and patience, sentence is always awarded
ithout the least respect or partiality. The
omplainant must be provided with sufficient
vidence for substantiating the facts alleged,
otherwise he is immediately condemned to die;
but, if the accusation be fully proved, the of-
fender is either directed to make restitution, or
to suffer some adequate corporal punishment,
according to the nature of his offence. Where
the aggressor is a person of rank and conse-
quence, the bastinado is generally inflicted by
the king himself; after which the offender is
again usually received into favour, and the mo-
narch dismisses him before the whole court with
a charge to be more circumspect in his conduct
for the future, or more impartial in the ad-
ministration of justice. These princes, though

and carries on a considerable
neighbouring states that surrou
of Pate is a Mahometan, and
jects profess the same religion
tributary to the Portuguese, v
potic authority over the lives
the natives. Lamo, Pemba,
rimba, Amlia, Anisa, and many
some of which are only five
circumference, merit no partic
Their princes assume the titl
many of them are tributary to

SECTION II

Mombasa and Qui

THE kingdoms of Mombas

nd elegance. Their bread consists of rice llet made into cakes, and mixed with herbs, and other ingredients, which render y agreeable. Their usual beverage is a f beer made of honey, or of some kind its. Their oranges are of exquisite taste avour. Their cattle are well fed; and the y abounds with every necessary of life.

e capital was formerly on a peninsula, has since been converted into an island. ouses are built in the Italian manner, of cemented with mortar, and embellished urious paintings; and the edifices are con- is to one another, and have terraces, on people may walk from one end of the to the other without interruption. It is led by a strong citadel, into which the guese retired, when they found the town ger tenable, but from which they were ards driven by an Arabian sheick, who it the place of his residence. The flagrant f oppression and injustice, of which the guese were guilty, occasioned their being ed from this port; since which time, they ly tolerated, and live like those of other s, whom commerce and the prospect of ave invited hither.

e natives are an assemblage of people of s complexions, black, white, tawny, or y. They dress after the Arabian manner; any of the men are clothed in the richest ost costly stuffs and silks; whilst the wo- re habited in gold and silver tissue. The re of their houses is no less elegant and le, and consists of carpets, paintings, gs, and a variety of ornaments, imported

from Cambaya, Persia, and other cou
this motley assemblage of Moors and C
hometans and Pagans, it would be difficu
which were the primitive people; but
all extremely affable and courteous to st

Of all the nations which have settle
inland part of this kingdom, the Imbis
most fierce, barbarous, and cruel. Thi
people is supposed to be the progeny
cannibals, that inhabit the neighbourhoo
Cape of Good Hope. They live entir
rapine and plunder; eat the captives th
into their hands; and even their relations,
they put to death when they are sick, in
that they may regale on their flesh.
favourite beverage is human blood, which
drink out of skulls, that serve them for
They were formerly so powerful in this
dom, that their monarchs could bring an
of eighty thousand of them into the field.

When they are about to engage an ene
they cause whole herds of cattle to precede t
at the head of their ranks. These are follo
by a number of men, who carry fire in
hands; and this emblem signifies, that all
are made prisoners, must expect to be ro
and devoured. Dreadful, indeed, is the fa
those who fall into the hands of these men
cannibals, and that of the country thr
which they pass: every man, woman, and c
is doomed to the most shocking and inh
death; and every place to plunder, fire,
desolation. Such is the terror they
that on their approach every one abandon
habitation and conceals himself. The
missionaries have endeavoured to convert the

that they might thus be civilized, or to
ate them; but in neither have they been
iful: all they have been able to do is to
them from their neighbourhood, and com-
iem to take refuge in the inland parts of
untry, where they themselves have never
able to penetrate, and where the Imbis oc-
vast regions unmolested. They, neverthe-
till at times make their appearance.

ese monsters worship as deities their mo-
s, who assume the title of emperors of the
earth, and who even brave heaven itself.
impiety is such, that when incommoded
e rain or the sun, they arrogantly bend
bows, and, in revenge, discharge their
s, accompanied with impotent imprecations,
st the sun and the firmament.

iloa received its name from its capital,
i stands in an island. The kingdom is
ed on the continent over against it, and is
two hundred miles from north to south,
s extent from east to west is unknown. It
ided from the island by a narrow channel,
he soil of both is so nearly the same for
ice and fertility, that they are supposed to
been formerly united. The king and his
:ts are Mahometans; and the complexion of
eople is various, some being black, and
; tawny. They speak the Arabic tongue,
also several other languages, which they
from the nations with whom they traffic.
dress is nearly similar to that of the inha-
:s of Mombasa, and greatly resembles that
Arabian Turks. The women wear brace-
f ivory curiously wrought, which, on the
of a parent, husband, or near relation,

profited by the same commerce

The capital is large, populous and the houses are made of s and constructed in the Spanis one side of the town is the ci sides the Mahometan prince: i stately towers, and surrounded other fortifications. The count is pleasant; and the climate i healthy.

The melancholy effects of t imperious sway of the Portugu sible in Quiloa, than in Mom arrival in these parts, they fou history is preserved, and wh known. Hoshein, who reigne seven sons at his death; one Hali, having been born of an and finding himself despised resolved to leave that kingdom fortune in a foreign country

ends and allies, endeavoured to tyrannise er every nation, and to usurp the supremacy every state, these princes took up arms to pel the invaders from their coast. The Porguese, however, under the command of Alcyda, the admiral of the fleet, having landed, arched towards the city of Quiloa, which was sooner perceived by the natives, than abandon- the town they sought safety in flight. Alyda, however, sent to recal the citizens, who, their arrival, fell on their kees, and implored is mercy and pardon; but raising them up, he sured them they had nothing to fear from m. On the contrary they ought, he said, to thankful for their deliverance from the usurtion of a cruel and perfidious tyrant, and for e restoration of their liberty and independence, the kindness of king Emanuel, who was a ost powerful and benevolent prince. As a roof of the blessings they might promise themelves under the protection of the king, his aster, he would raise Mahmud Ancon to the yal dignity, whose affection, fidelity, and conuct, they had so long and so often experienced. Accordingly, to conclude the scene with the reater splendor, he saluted him king of Quiloa, nd placed a crown of gold upon his head; imosing on him, however, at the same time, an nnual tribute, and obliging him to behave, in ll other respects, as a faithful vassal of the ortuguese monarch.

But before Almeyda departed from Quiloa, ahmud Ancon, so far from being elated with is new situation, took an opportunity of diesting himself of the regal dignity in favour f a son of the deposed monarch, and thus exhibited

distrust and resentment. The
Quiloans of the most advant
their trade; and the comme
and with the adjacent islands,
interrupted, and the natives
poverished; whilst the Portu
mense riches, by their tyran
This conduct excited the in
geance of the inhabitants a
Portugal, who was obliged t
vernor and garrison from thi

From Quiloa Almeyda sa
and having, after considerable
succeeded in obtaining posse
an Arab was sent from the n
of truce; proposing that the
subject and tributary to Port
that the city should be exemp
and requesting an interview
and that hostages might be g

obtained their purpose, and plundered
n, than the commander ordered them to
n fire in three different parts, which was
ngly executed and the city consumed. It
owever, afterwards rebuilt, quickly re-
its ancient grandeur, and is now well
l. Mombasa and Quiloa have been more
ıtly governed by the same monarch, than
ed and divided into two distinct sove-
:s.

SECTION III.

Mosambique.

SAMBIQUE is a very small island, si-
about two miles from the continent, and is
ore than six musket shots in length, and
breadth. It is, however, of singular im-
:e and utility to the Portuguese in trading
East Indies; and if wrested from them
· European power, they would scarcely
to carry on that extensive commerce; it
lmost impossible to continue their voyage
country, without such a place of refresh-
nd refuge. It also serves to keep many
ms in awe, both along the coast and the
ıt islands, which are either allies or tri-
s; and secures to them the free, if not
e commerce with Sofala and Monomo-

soil of the island is sandy and barren;
e refreshments it affords to the voyagers
ɔp here, are procured from the continent,
they are produced in great abundance,
m whence the water that is made use of,
received. The bay, which serves for a
haven

haven both for the island and contin
and convenient, and has seldom less
or ten fathom depth of water, which
that every bank, rock, and shallo
easily discerned. The city of Mo
beautifully situated, the houses are
especially the churches and conve
fort or castle is about a musket-sh
town. This fortress, which is exceedi
and well contrived, is of a square f
corner of which is flanked by a bul
several pieces of artillery, which are
defence for the town and the harbour

The country abounds with vast q
cattle. It also contains rich mines
which is also washed down by the rive
quantities, and forms a considerable p
commerce. Ivory, ebony, slaves,
are likewise exchanged for European
little bells, knives, scissars, &c. Ra
much valued by them, that fifteen
been given for one. The Portuguese
they are much afraid, are the only
admitted into their sea-ports, and t
they refuse access. The natives, h
extremely jealous of those visit
they put no confidence, but make th
by means of Moorish factors. B
modities already mentioned, the Port
[illegible] from thence silver, copper, wa
[illegible] visions.

[illegible] abounds with a [illegible]
[illegible] tigers, boars, [illegible]
[illegible] extremely [illegible]
[illegible] with [illegible]
[illegible] with [illegible]

the common and tame ones in England, uch larger. The flesh of these fowls has quisite taste and flavour, affords very some nourishment, and is frequently eaten ithout any inconvenience.

e natives are fierce and barbarous. They naked, both men and women, with a covering of cotton cloth across the waist. umanity exists among these negroes: fa- sell their children, and children their fa- mothers, sisters, and brothers, for a knife, glass beads, or such like trinkets. They on perpetual war with each other, and eat esh of their prisoners. Slavery is, there- a condition no ways dreadful to them.

ey wear collars, and bracelets on their arms egs, made of gold, silver, ivory, coloured or other materials, according to their and degree in life. They fix pieces of gold, r, or bone, under the lower and above the lip, to make them project, and render large. They also paint their bodies with id of red earth, especially against their ngs and festivals: this gives them a horrid rance, though they esteem it a mark of ge and fierceness. Their usual weapons ows, arrows, hatchets, and daggers. Some hat they are idolaters and Mahometans; t others affirm that, like the rest of the es, they have no religion, but observe some stitious customs, not worthy of the name orship. They have no trades, nor manu- es. The celebrated Vasco de Gama was rst European that discovered this country, ich he landed after doubling the Cape of Hope.

SECTION

SECTION IV.

Sofala.

IN the southern part of the coast of Zang
l:s Sofala, a kingdom that produces suc
quantities of gold, as to favour a suppositio
it was the Ophir of the inspired writers,
whence king Solomon annually received so
of that valuable metal. This kingdom, whi
tends from the seventeenth to the twen
degree of south latitude, is bounded on th
by the Indian sea, and on the west by the c
of Monomotapa; and is seven hundred an
leagues in circumference.

The climate, soil, and produce of the co
greatly resemble those of Zanguebar, excep
the air is more temperate, and the land con
ably richer in rice, millet, and pasturage.
between Cape Coriantes and the river S
Sancto the ground is most fruitful, and the
try is stocked with numerous herds of all
of cattle. Elephants appear in large
and, as they are the principal food of the
four or five thousand are annually kill
consumed. That part of the country wh
included between Cape Coriantes and the
Cuama, is mountainous, and abounds wit
woods; while the vallies, being watered
number of springs and rivulets, are exter
luxuriant and delightful.

The natives of Sofala are in general
red, and black complexioned, with short c
hair; and are said to be affable and
especially those that reside near Cape Cori

ıal dress is a piece of silk or cotton wrap-
nd the waist, and extending to the knees,
any other covering whatever; but the
fluent wear turbans. They decorate
ves with rings of gold, silver, amber, or
l beads, according to their rank and con-
n life. Those on the coast speak the
tongue, and also understand the language
Caffres and Portuguese.

bread is a composition of rice and mil-
their drink is a species of beer made of
ıe grain. They have great plenty and
of fish and flesh; but the elephant is
d the most delicious food. Honey is in
ındance, that much of it is suffered to
ınd the people gather it for the purpose
cting the wax, which they barter for silks
ınted cottons. Their chief commerce is
e inhabitants of Mosambique, Quiloa,
sa, and Melinda, who import a variety
s, which they exchange for gold, ivory,
d ambergris; and the Sofalans generally
ıose stuffs to Monomotapa, where they
n to great advantage.

es the gold drawn from Monomotapa,
;dom of Sofala contains several very con-
e mines of that precious metal, which
pon an average about two millions of
s yearly, each metigul being valued at
French livres; to which amount the
ıts of Mecca also export gold dust, in one
during a time of peace. Indeed, so plen-
l pure is this dust, that the soldiers are
h it just as it is gathered.

metropolis of this kingdom, before the
of the Portuguese, was an inconsiderable

into disuse, and both mariners a
give it the ancient appellation o

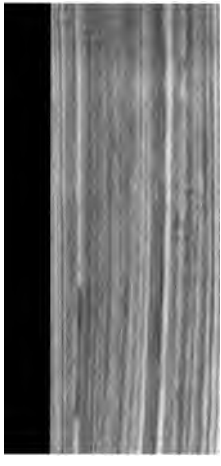
At the first arrival of the
people had no other warlike we
lins, scymitars, bows and arrow
daggers: but they are now ta
small-arms and artillery. The
a vast number of forces; but
employing vessels of observatio
sible purpose of preventing wh
illicit trade, keep the whole king
in awe.

The Arabs having been settl
for some centuries, the king an
persons of the court are descen
race, and profess Mahometanis
natives retain their primitive c
civil and religious matters, and
knowledge and pay adoration t
Being, whom they

ey perform their principal religious cere-
s on the first, sixth, seventh, eleventh, and
nth days of the moon; when they make a
of general oblation to their deceased friends,
ffer up petitions to them for their assistance
rotection. These supplications being finish-
ey feast very heartily on what had been
nted to the dead, and thus conclude the
nity On these occasions they always ap-
in white garments.

ancesco Gnaja was the first Portuguese na-
or that touched at Sofala. He had the ad-
to engage in his interest a courtier called
te, whom he sent to the king (whose name
Jusef, and who, through extreme age, had
his sight), to request the permission of the
rch for erecting a fortress near the city,
h he was instructed to affirm would be of
utmost advantage as well to the natives as
he Portuguese. By the intercession of this
leman, the Portuguese obtained their desire,
ugh the strongest and most frequent remon-
nces were made against this destructive mea-
e by several of the royal family. In particu-
Mengo Musaf, son-in-law of the king, and a
ve and politic prince, urged to the aged mo-
:h his apprehensions of the consequence of
reception and admittance of these strangers,
of the permission he had granted of fortify-
themselves in the kingdom.

he old king endeavoured to dispel the fears
s son-in-law, by telling him, "You will per-
the heat and atmosphere of our climate, to
h they are not accustomed, will soon destroy
alf of these strangers, and render the other
We may then attack them with advantage,



folly and imprudence of
assembled a sufficient nu
pointed a day for extermi
whilst they were employe
their fort. But, unhappi
narch, the treacherous Z
nally of Abyssinian extra
crets of the king to the Po
them of his designs, wh
opportunity of making t
tions for giving the ass
tion.

Accordingly, the day a
the Sofalans attacked the
but were bravely repulse
At length, however, the
was reduced to thirty-five
wounded. and would soo

lignation and courage of the monarch n raised, and, though old and blind, he d several of his enemies with javelins, nong the rest, Gnaja himself. A Por- officer advanced towards the king with mitar drawn, and at one blow struck off l, an act which excited the horror and of the monarch's attendants, who imme- laid down their arms and submitted.

this Gnaja forbade his soldiers to offer ther violence to a people, whose esteem, he wished to conciliate by acts of friend- d benevolence. This had the desired ef- d the Sofalans, fatally convinced they had nd with an enemy much more powerful acious than themselves, readily embraced ffered terms, and hostilities immediately

The admiral having thus far succeeded esigns, created the perfidious Zacote king la, as a reward of his fidelity and attach- the Portuguese. Gnaja having enjoined ople to consider and acknowledge the as their lawful sovereign, obliged him his turn, to take the oaths of allegiance crown of Portugal, and to promise that duct, on all occasions, should be such as a dependant and tributary prince.

SECTION V.

Monomotapa.

NOMOTAPA, next to Abyssinia, is one largest empires in all Africa; though it known to Europeans than almost any art of the continent. It is bounded by the

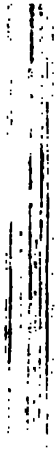
ty-nith degrees or south latit
the forty-first and fifty-sixth de
gitude; being six hundred a
from north to south, and six hu
from east to west.

Though this country is pri
under the southern tropic, it n
a temperate climate: the air is c
the soil is fertile and well wat
fruit-trees, and cattle, are bo
plentiful. The forests abound
wild beasts, the rivers teem w
currents that descend from the
with them vast quantities of
There are neither horses nor an
burden, but great herds of ele
several thousands are annually

The natives are well shaped
and healthy; and their compl
with curled and woolly hair. Th
is war, which they prefer to peac

Monomotapans go naked to the waist, n thence downwards they are covered ece of cloth of various colours, which made of cotton; but persons of rank action wear India silks, or cotton em- l with gold; the skin of a lion or of er beast being thrown over the should- ail of which hangs to the ground. Po- is permitted, and the men are allowed a number of wives as they are able to : but the first is always considered as and head of the family, and her children ne fortune of their father; whilst the of the others are regarded as servants iors.

mperor affects great splendor in his dress page, and has a great number of tribu- dependent princes. His usual dress is long vest or cassock, which depends to . He also wears a brocaded mantle shoulders richly embroidered; his neck d with a magnificent collar, beautifully precious stones; a band of equally va- wellery surrounds his turban; and his are finely ornamented with gold and Whenever he appears abroad he is upon an elephant, or is carried on a n, which is supported by four persons of n. On these occasions, besides other aments, he carries a small spade, and in each hand; which are emblems of and power, and intimate to the subject ssity of cultivating the ground for his nce and support, and remind the mo- the duty of protecting and defending his



send all their sons to be edu
where they are detained as h
lity of their parents, and ta
fancy to consider the empero
and render him their duty an
double piece of policy they
which consists in sending a
year to all his vassals, who
what is denominated the new
who are employed on these oc
rived at the court of a depen
prince, command him immed
his fire. This injunction is
with than he is permitted to
the fire brought for that purp
disobey and prove refractory,
a rebel, and war declared aga

But as the emperors of M
tremely careful to keep their
dience and subjection, they a

ppearing in his presence, which is esteemed
eat mortification, and is often attended with
ch inconvenience. Such, indeed, is their af-
ionate regard for their sovereign, that when
he drinks, sneezes, or coughs, one of the
les present cries aloud, "Pray for the health
prosperity of the emperor," which is immedi-
ely repeated by all within the distance of
ring, and the air is filled with acclamations.
his monarch is said to have a thousand wives,
f whom are the daughters of vassal princes,
the first alone enjoys the title of empress.
y accompany him into the country during
season of harvest, and assist in gathering in
corn and fruits, and superintend those that
employed by the emperor. When he is pre-
ted by war or other matters from attending
his occupation, the empress presides in his
n, and distributes to all their portion of la-
r. On these occasions the emperor and his
rt are always accompanied by a numerous
d of musicians, rope-dancers, and buffoons,
the amusement of the populace, and the
le night is spent in merriment and rejoicing.
the many wives that belong to this monarch,
e are nine who rank next to the empress, and
y some considerable post at court. One is
d mazarira, and appears on behalf of the
uguese, by whom she is presented with many
able gifts; and another performs the same
e in favour of the Moors. All the rest have
respective titles, employments, and in-
es; and when one of them dies, another is
ed to succeed in her room.

The *principal officers* of the court are the mu-
esha or governor of the kingdom, who acts

where they are detained as ho
lity of their parents, and tak
fancy to consider the emperor
and render him their duty and
double piece of policy they
which consists in sending a
year to all his vassals, who
what is denominated the new
who are employed on these oc
rived at the court of a depen
prince, command him immedi
his fire. This injunction is r
with than he is permitted to l
the fire brought for that purp
disobey and prove refractory,
a rebel, and war declared aga

But as the emperors of M
tremely careful to keep their

earing in his presence, which is esteemed
t mortification, and is often attended with
inconvenience. Such, indeed, is their af-
nate regard for their sovereign, that when-
e drinks, sneezes, or coughs, one of the
present cries aloud, "Pray for the health
rosperity of the emperor," which is imme-
y repeated by all within the distance of
g, and the air is filled with acclamations.
is monarch is said to have a thousand wives,
whom are the daughters of vassal princes,
e first alone enjoys the title of empress.
accompany him into the country during
ason of harvest, and assist in gathering in
rn and fruits, and superintend those that
nployed by the emperor. When he is pre-
d by war or other matters from attending
s occupation, the empress presides in his
, and distributes to all their portion of la-

On these occasions the emperor and his
are always accompanied by a numerous
of musicians, rope-dancers, and buffoons,
he amusement of the populace, and the
e night is spent in merriment and rejoicing.
e many wives that belong to this monarch,
are nine who rank next to the empress, and
some considerable post at court. One is
l mazarira, and appears on behalf of the
guese, by whom she is presented with many
able gifts; and another performs the same
in favour of the Moors. All the rest have
respective titles, employments, and in-
s; and when one of them dies, another is
d to succeed in her room.

e principal officers of the court are the nin-
sha or governor of the kingdom, who acts

a

as prime minister; the mokomasha or c
general of the forces; the ambuya, or lor
steward, to whom, among other extraor
privileges, it appertains to nominate a n
press on the demise of the former; the
tore, or captain of the band of musician
is generally a grandee of the empire; th
kao, or captain of the van-guard; and th
rumo, which signifies the king's right han

The emperor finally determines the v
every judicial proceeding, if the parties
ance shall think proper to appeal from th
sion of the judges. In Monomotapa
places of confinement for malefactors, b
all matters being tried in a summary mann
tence or acquittal immediately ensues.
complaint be of such a nature as to requi
for invalidating or confirming it, and th
accused be likely to make his escape, he is
a tree, and a guard placed over him, till
nocence or guilt can be thoroughly invest
If any inconsistency appear between tw
nesses, a purgative draught is employed,
the water of bitterness among the Jew
remain with the person supposed to be g
perjury, he is acquitted; if it does not, he
tenced to suffer death, which is immediat
flicted on him.

The natives of this vast empire are su
tious and idolatrous, but nevertheless ac
ledge and adore a Supreme Being, creat
governor of the universe, whom they call I
and Attuna, which correspond with tho
attributes. They pay, moreover, a singul
neration to a virgin named Al Firoo, in h
of whom temples and convents are erected

eligious places of seclusion, the daughters
Monomotapans are confined to perpetual
y, and shut up from all commerce with
so early a period, as to preclude the possi-
f suffering any contamination of their na-
rity.

metropolis is a spacious city, and consists
ast number of houses, built of timber or
whitewashed, and constructed in the form
me. But the principal ornament of the
the imperial palace, which is a large and
s fabric made of wood, having towers and
es, where is constantly stationed a nume-
ard of troops. The inside of this struc-
divided into a variety of splendid apart-
and great and lofty halls, which are de-
d with a magnificent kind of cotton tapes-
autifully coloured. The ceilings, beams,
fters are adorned with gold; the chairs
bles gilt and enamelled; and the candle-
made of ivory, and suspended by chains
er. The emperor is served at table on the
and the dishes are not tasted till he has
d his repast.

his country, we are told, is a province or
t appropriated for the habitation of female
rs, who resemble the ancient Amazons,
bserve their mode of life. Whenever the
or goes to war, these heroines always con-
a part of his body-guard. Their arms are
r to those of the men, and consist of bows
rrows, javelins, sabres, cutlasses, poniards,
ight battle-axes, exceedingly sharp: these
manage with great dexterity, being taught
e them from their infancy. The emperor
lso a pack of two hundred dogs, which he
considers

renounce a plurality of wom
himself to one wife, he not onl
religion, but persecuted all tha
verted to Christianity. The
several forts in this country,
permitted to construct during
former emperor for assisting hin
of some revolted vassals. Th
in possession of the gold mines
of the empire; have many ch
nasteries; and are the princip
Monomotapa.

The history of the last emperc
with whom we are acquainte
Fumigarbachi died in the fort
his age, and left sixty-four s
pointing a successor to the th
a long and bloody contest in
menced. This war was so viol
tizans so strenuous, that, at le

ple, to whom his government had become

Whilst Nahi usurped the crown, the ince escaped into a distant country, where hased a small estate, which he cultivated is own hands, and where he lived in ty and retirement. He married a wife, m he had a son named Alfondi, who, at y period, exhibited marks of genius, ac- the love, and excited the admiration of ghbouring people, by his modesty and the ess of his disposition. He soon displayed aunted courage, and greatly signalized in the hunting of elephants, lions, tigers, ier ferocious animals.

ing heard of a war that existed between is grand uncle, of whose relationship he norant, and a neighbouring monarch, he d himself with arms and horses, and at- only by a small number of brave youths, he had engaged to follow his fortune, he d to offer his assistance to the emperor. portunity soon presented itself for distin- g himself by his bravery and intrepidity, excited the attention of the whole army. ove all, his conduct attracted the notice lmiration of his grand uncle, who con- such an opinion of this youthful stranger, intrusted him with the command of a f troops, and requested him to attack the who were posted in an advantageous and ant situation. This he accordingly did uch proofs of his abilities and military that Nahi advanced him to the chief nd of the army. In the space of six s, the young general performed such sur- exploits, and obtained so many victories,

that the enemy were compelled to sue for
In order to reward him for these great and
services, the emperor bestowed on hi
princess his daughter in marriage, withc
least suspicion of his real birth and c
tion, of which Alfondi himself was whol
norant.

By a sentiment equally generous and na
he invited his father to participate in the su
and prosperity of his fortune. No sooner
the exiled prince arrive at court, than he
closed the whole matter, and declared hir
the son of the late emperor Fumigarbachi.
old monarch immediately recognized in
brother-in-law the nephew whose throne he
cupied. He resigned the government to h
with pleasure, and the newly created empe
transferred the sceptre to his son. Alfondi
his spouse were, therefore, crowned amidst
loud and repeated acclamations of the pe
whose esteem he continued to merit by his ju
and beneficence.

SECTION VI.

Monemugi.

MONEMUGI is a vast empire of unc
limits, but the boundaries of which exten
Mon[illegible] on the south, and to Congo o
west. Of this country geographers are g
[illegible], and for the little that is know
[illegible] it, we are indebted to the interme
[illegible] commerce with thi
[illegible] against it.

[illegible] hot, and the climat
[illegible] to health. In some parts the

, and the country pleasant and well watered many springs and rivulets. It abounds variety of birds and beasts; has a great er of palm-trees, of the fruit of which nake wine; and produces more honey than habitants can consume. It also contains gold and silver mines of great value.

e government is an absolute monarchy; he sovereign is rich and powerful, and has ied most of the petty states and kingdoms border on his dominions. The natives uid to be idolaters, Mahometans, and Caf- by the last of whom is understood infidels, ople destitute of religion. Under the name iffres also the Europeans comprehend ne- , who form the most considerable part of habitants of Monemugi. The frontiers of mpire are occupied by the Giagas, or Im- vho are the same savage and barbarous that harass Mombasa and Quiloa. It is mprobable that they may also be the same e Gallas, who infest and surround Abys- and strike the inhabitants of that country consternation and dismay. This being the e of Africa, it gives birth to these monsters, thirst for blood, and whom the emperor oys in his frequent wars with the neigh- ng kingdoms. Whenever the approach of cannibals is known, the inhabitants im- ately abandon their country, and carry off ir moveable possessions.

e Giagas are also employed by the emperor st a republic of Amazons, who inhabit the iers of Monemugi, and into which country make frequent incursions. The Giagas, ver, keep them in awe, not so much by

their superior strength and valour, as by their barbarity and the apprehensions they occasion of being roasted alive and eaten. Hence it is, that when their troops engage, the contest is obstinate and dreadful, for as no quarter is given, the fight is continued to the very last.

The commerce of this empire consists of gold, silver, copper, and ivory, which are exchanged for silks, cotton-cloth, beads, and such like trinkets.

SECTION VII.

Caffraria.

CAFFRARIA is bounded on the north by the country of the Bosjesmans, or wild Hottentots, on the west by the Great Fish river, and on the south and east by the ocean; and is situated between the thirtieth and thirty-fourth degrees of south latitude. A great part of this country exhibits a rugged and barren appearance; but there are vallies of rich pasture; and the hang-

raze."* The milk of their cows, when
ulated, is the principal food of the Caffres.
country abounds with a great variety of
; but the elephant and the buffalo have of
years become very scarce.

ne Caffres have not contrived to draw any
ntage from the possession of a sea-coast, nor
hey follow any kind of fishing. Whether
are restrained by some superstitious attach-
, which forbids them the use of fish; or their
e of life has hitherto prevented them from
idering the means by which they might ob-
a support from the waters, is unknown;
hey scarcely know what kind of a creature
h is. Nor in the whole extent of their coast,
h is washed by the sea, and intersected by
ral large and deep rivers, is there a single
or canoe, or any thing resembling a float-
vessel.

he Caffres are supposed not to be the aborig-
s of the southern angle of Africa. They
surrounded on all sides by a people different
n them in colour, in features, in form, in
osition, in manners, and in language; and
ould, therefore, be absurd to consider them
ndigenous to the spot they at present possess.
speculate on the origin of the Caffres, it is
able they are descendants of the Bedouin
bs, who penetrated into almost every part
his continent. Certain it is, that much of
Arab features are visible in the countenance
Caffre; and they greatly resemble each
r in their way of life, their pastoral habits,
character.

* Barrow's Travels in Southern Africa.

Perhaps no nation on earth, taken c
can produce so fine a race of men as t
they are tall, stout, muscular, well-pr
and elegant figures. They are exem
from many of those causes, which
civilized societies, impede the growth
the vigour of the human frame. T
simple; their exercise of a salutary n
the air they breathe pure and salub
are unacquainted with the use of ene
deleterious liquors; and they eat wh
and sleep when nature demands ease
ment. In such a life, langnor and
cannot exist; and, in fact, the cou
a Caffre is always placid and cheerf
whole of his deportment bespeaks
content.

Some of the Caffres are covered
cloaks, but the greater part go enti
The women wear on their heads cap
ornamented with beads, shells, an
copper and iron, which are disposed
of forms. They have also long clo
pend to the calf of the leg. The c
Caffres have a long brass chain suspe
left side.

Their villages consist of about for
huts, constructed in the form of bee-h
which is destined for the use of the q
at the head of the village, and is lar
rest, and finished in a more elega
These huts are about ten feet in dia
eight feet in height. They are first
frames of wood, and afterwards pla
with a kind of mortar composed of c
dung of cattle; and, when this is

hey are neatly covered with matting.
are very warm, and completely proof
water.

principal weapon of the Caffres is an iron
rom nine to twelve inches in length,
they call omkontoo, but the Hottentots
the appellation of hassagai. They will
this spear, with a tolerable degree of
ss, to the distance of forty or fifty paces.
n battle they receive the point of the has-
n an oval shield, made of the hide of a
. The keerie, which is a stick about two
d a half in length, with a round knob at
l, is less formidable than the hassagai,
d in the same manner. Every Caffre is
er and a tradesman, The former is not
ssion, but undertaken according to the
ies of the state of which he is a member.
never carried on by them for the extension
tory or individual aggrandizement, but
purpose of avenging some insult or act
stice.

iat part of the country which lies on the
tl e river Keiskamma, the inhabitants ac-
dge and obey a common sovereign, whose
s Gaika; but on the western side, and
the emigrant Caffres, each chief is in-
ent. Polygamy is allowed; but the cir-
ices of the common people will not permit
he indulgence of more than one wife.
nales being considered as the property of
arents, are disposed of by sale; and the
rice of a wife is an ox, or two cows.
laws are simple, and founded less on
han on the unerring principles of nature.
urder should appear to be committed by
premeditated

over the lives of his subjects,
any man to death by design,
passion, he would be expelle
Restitution is the only punish

The Caffres believe in the
invisible power, which cause
denly, or before they arrive at
that raises the wind, and mak
lightning to injure, or terrify
the sun by day, and the moo
in short, that created all those
could neither understand, n
know little more of astronomy,
thirty days the moon will hav
and that after twelve of then
will return. Their only chr
registered by notches in wo
moon, and seldom extends

the manner of their disposal of the
uneral rites are bestowed only on the
their chiefs, and on their children.
er are interred in the kraals, or places
oxen usually stand at night; the latter
ited in the hills excavated by the myr-
æ or ant-eaters. The bodies of the
posed to be devoured by wolves, with
country abounds.

CHAP. VII.

Hottentots.

country of the Hottentots is situated
een the twenty-eighth and thirty-fifth
south latitude; and contains the Dutch
ie Cape of Good Hope, which stands
four degrees fifteen minutes of south
and in sixteen degrees twenty minutes
igitude from London. The Hottentot
e divided in sixteen in number: the
as, the Ghonaquas, the Sussaquas, the
the Chirigriquas, the Greater and
amaaquas, the Attaquas, the Koop-
Hessaquas, the Songuas, the Dun-
Damaquas, the Gauroes, the Hou-
the Heykoms, and the Chamtours.
l in general is so amazingly rich as to
e of producing every species of grain,
l fruits: the country, indeed, about the
full of rocks and mountains, but their
ummits are cloathed with rich pasture,
l with a variety of flowers of the most
beauty and fragrance, and abound
with

with delicious springs, which f
slopes, and meander through th
plains which intervene are as b
imagination can conceive, and ch
every spectator, who is capable o
exuberant productions of unassist

The Cape of Good Hope was
by the Portuguese in the year
established no settlement nearer
banks of the Great Fish river.
1600, almost every European n
visit the Cape in their voyages
dies; and in 1620, a formal poss
taken by two commanders of t
company, in the name of James,
Britain; but it was no farther
time, by the English governm
captain Van Riebeck having t
place with a Dutch fleet, and dra
conclusion of the fertility of
abundance of cattle, and the tra
natives, represented the great n
tages which might accrue from
colony at the Cape of Good H
sequence of these representation
of the Dutch East India company
ships for the expedition, appointe
commander in chief, and veste
powers to treat with the Hottento
such discretionary stipulations a
to the interest of the republic in
the company in particular. Ha
the Cape, the Dutch commande
natives with a vast quantity of
and liquors, to the value of 5(
upon which the Hottentots, ch

osity, gave them permission to settle among
resigned a part of the country in their
r, and commercial regulations seemed to
tablished on the firm and permanent basis
iprocal interest.

e difficulties which for a time impeded the
ion of the settlement, were principally oc-
ied by the wild beasts of various kinds
abounded in every part of the country.
ved, by their passion for intoxicating li-
and baubles, of the only means of existence,
atives began rapidly to decline in number;
he encroachments of the settlers were in
rtion to the diminution of obstacles. No
was granted in property except in the vici-
of the Cape. A law was passed that the
st distance from one house to another should
ree miles; and on account of the scarcity
ater, it frequently happened that many
were much farther distant from each other.
he Dutch advanced, the natives retired;
hose that remained with their herds among
ew settlers, were soon reduced to the ne-
y of becoming their servants.

1795, the Dutch colony at the Cape sur-
ered to the arms of his Britannic majesty;
t the general peace of 1801, it was restored
former possessors; with this agreement,
the port should be open to the commerce
navigation of the English and French na-
. No permanent limits had been fixed to
olony, under the Dutch government; but
ng the period in which it was held by Great
in, the territory composing the settlement
e Cape of Good Hope was defined; and
ean length from west to east was found to
be

thous....
individual possesses eig...
miles of ground.

It has been supposed that th
the descendants of the ancient T
were the posterity of Abrah
Kethura. It is conjectured by
travelled through this country
become extinct. "These wea
he, "the most helpless, and
condition perhaps the most w
human race, duped out of t
their country, and finally out
have entailed on their miser
state of existence, to which that
bear the comparison of happine
dition, however, not likely to c
remote posterity. The name o
forgotten, or scarcely remem

iguage of the Hottentots is harsh and
ble. It is a compound of the most
iary sounds. Almost all monosyllables,
irst part of compounded words, are
he mouth with a sudden retraction of
e from the teeth or palate, against
iad been pressed. The noise made by
l is that which is sometimes used to
ipatience; and the palatial is more full
ous, and nearly similar to the clacking
that has chickens. Hence it is, that
age of the Hottentots has been called
r, in which the ear can distinguish
irticulate, and said to resemble the
; of the magpie and the screaming of
But when it is considered, that all
s, in their infancy, consisted probably
e or monosyllabic sounds, to which
iflexions of the voice were applied for
g a number of ideas, it will be con-
at the mode adopted by the Hottentots
ssing a variety of objects, and for con-
eas in a clear and distinct manner, is
curious and extraordinary. The di-
simple sounds into their elements, and
arious combinations of these elements
an unlimited number of new sounds,
of the most wonderful inventions of
l far beyond the powers and genius of
tot. But by means of a very few com-
ords and the clacking of the tongue,
was necessary in speech was obtained.
uage of the Hottentots, it is generally

aking criminals on the wheel, and of using the
rture for extorting confession.

them are so much accustomed t
they introduce into their own lan
of the organ of speech, sufficie
shew from whence they obtained

The person of a Hottentot, wh
no means void of symmetry and
are well-proportioned and erect.
rance of muscle indicates stre
body is delicately formed, and m
nacy and inactivity of the min
large heads, lively eyes, a flat n
teeth white as ivory, hair rese
negroes and exceedingly black, a
feet. The colour of the skin is a ye
and not unlike a faded leaf, bu
from the sickly hue of a person i
to which it has been said to resem
the women, when young, and pre
bearing children, might serve as
fection in the human figure
feet are remar

his miserable condition; and requests
will expel him from the society. This
is always complied with. Having
e decrepid old man upon an ox, a great
he inhabitants accompany and conduct
hut erected for the purpose, in some
id solitary spot. Here they deposit a
es within his reach, and then depart,
this miserable outcast of society to
age and hunger, if he is not devoured
easts.

nowever, as they are sunk in the scale
ity, their character seems to be much
and misrepresented. They are, in ge-
mild, quiet, and timid people; entirely
honest, and faithful; and, though
lly phlegmatic, they are kind and af-
to each other, and not incapable of
achments. A Hottentot would divide
morsel he had with his companions.
not defective in talent, but possess lit-
n to call it into action. Their indo-
real disease, the only remedy of which
Rather than have the trouble of pro-
od by the chase, or of digging the
r roots, they will fast the whole day,
hey may be allowed to sleep. Eating
ng form their highest gratifications;
they cannot indulge in the former,
ally find immediate relief in the lat-
think," says the Hottentot, "is to
d to labour is the scourge of life."

e and astronomy are two sciences,
be supposed to have dated their ori-
he first dawn of civilization: by the
were taught to strengthen the vital

...w still less. They have a name
the sun, another for the moon, and
the stars; but this is the extent of
nomical knowledge. They are, ho
lent marksmen with the gun; are
expert in exploring a passage acros
uninhabited country; and, by the
their eye, will discover objects at
distance.

The custom of greasing the bo
ping it in skins, has been the cons
abuse against the Hottentots, but
smallest reason. In a hot climat
water is extremely scarce, it is a na
to anoint the skin, lest it should be
led and parched by the scorching
sun, and has been adopted by
situated in, or near, the torrid zor
tom, indeed, renders their effluvia
strangers; but tends to prom...
their bodies

ed buchu; but these generally consti-
ornaments of the other sex.
Hottentot women, like those of most
ions, are fond of finery, and have their
ms, and legs, loaded with glass-beads;
argest and most splendid of these orna-
e bestowed on a little apron, about se-
ght inches in width, which hangs from
, and scarcely reaches the middle of
. A vast number of Dutch toys and
re constantly imported, of which these
e extravagantly fond, and for which
ishly barter their cattle and most valu-
erty. The men blow up the bladders
ld beasts they have slain, and tie them
air as proofs of their bravery. They
o abroad without a stick of about a
ngth, to the end of which is tied the
l of a wild cat, fox, or other animal;
ves as a handkerchief to wipe off the
veat, and clean their noses.
at the entrails of beasts, after depriving
mpurities, and washing them in clean
but, besides the flesh of cattle and cer-
animals, they also subsist on fruits
. They boil their meat after the Eu-
anner, but roast it differently. Few,
are at any trouble in cooking their
and they more generally prefer raw
ch they tear in pieces with their fin-
eat so voraciously, that the very sight
s sufficient to nauseate a delicate sto-
ey have some traditionary laws among
ch prohibit the eating of swine's flesh
es without scales. The women are
lden to eat the blood of beasts, and

The ordinary beverage of the
milk or water, which are the natu
ductions of their country; but,
for them, they are great lovers of
and arrack, which, if their circu
mit, they drink to such excess, t
quently become victims to this spe
perance.

The houses, or huts, of the nat
in an elliptical form, and formed
veral large sticks in the ground, v
at the top so as to describe an arc
with mats sewed together. The
dom more than three feet in heigh
the triple purpose of door, windo
ney. A few earthen vessels, int
purpose of dressing their victuals,
whole of their furniture. Twenty
these huts are generally placed
circular form, and make what is
an village, which frequently con

form a similar ring round the bride, at
stance. In this situation they continue,
priest, entering first the circle of men,
es a small quantity of urine on the bride-
who rubs it over his body with the
celerity; after which, the old gentle-
ceeding to the other circle, performs the
ice on the bride, who likewise rubs her-
this delicate liquid, after the example
ridegroom. The priest then goes from
to the other alternately, till his reservoir
sted; and whilst in the act of besprink-
m, repeats the following form of prayer:
ou live long together, and be happy!
be blessed with a son before the end of
, and may that son prove the comfort of
d age! and may he become a man of
, and a great hunter!"

an infant is born, it is rubbed gently
h cow-dung, which is dried by the sun,
fire. They then gather a few stalks of
h the juice of which they wash the limbs
hild, in order to give them vigour and
; after which, the whole body of the in-
esmeared with the fat of sheep or but-
l powdered with buchu, which they ima-
ntains very salutary qualities. The child
named by one of the parents, being pre-
sprinkled with urine, and generally re-
s appellation from some favourite beast.
ne males reach their eighth or ninth year,
deprived of their left testicle; and this
n is supposed to contribute to their agi-
unning. When they arrive at the age of
, they are freed from maternal autho-
d privileged to keep the company of the
men.

ment is truly devout and commenda
seem much affected with what is deli
missionaries, and tears frequently flo
eyes of those, to whom the discou
particularly addressed.*

Having given a concise account of
most remarkable in the manners,
religion of the natives, we shall nex
describe Cape Town, and its princi
This capital is pleasantly situated at
Table Bay, and affords shelter to s
harbour from the winds that blow fr
The town consists of about eleven hun
built with regularity, and kept in
and is disposed into straight and par
which intersect each other at right an
are three or four squares, in one
held the public market; another is t
the peasantry with their waggons, f
mote districts of the colony; and a
as a parade, for exercising the troop
the streets are open and airy, and ha
water running through them, walled,
with oaks, on each side.

The barracks, originally intended
pital, and for repositories of corn,
well-designed, and regular buildi
with two of its wings, occupies par
the sides of the great square; and
apartments are sufficiently spacious
ing four thousand men. The castle
nificent and extensive edifice, which
harbour, and is an excellent defence
sudden invasion. It affords every n

* Bar[illegible] Travels in Southern Af

cc

ndation for a garrison of one thousand
contains very commodious and beautiful
gs for all the officers of the company;
s magazines for public stores. The other
igs are a Calvinistic and Lutheran church;
d-house, in which the council of burghers
or the transaction of business relative to
lice of the town; a large structure, in
the slaves of the government are lodged;
e court of justice, where civil and criminal
are heard and determined.

government of the Cape is composed of
ouncils. The first, or grand council, con-
the governor and eight others, who are
lly the highest officers in the company's
; the second is the college of justice; the
akes cognizance of all breaches of the
and is dependant on the last; the fourth
d the court of marriages, and takes care
l nuptial contracts be entered into with
ısent of the parents or guardians of both
; the fifth is the chamber of orphans;
h is the ecclesiastical college; the seventh
ourt of common council; and the eighth
tends all military regulations. The ser-
f the Dutch company amount to about
ıdred, who are divided into two classes,
lified and the unqualified: the former are
ho compose the administration, and their
the latter are the soldiers, artificers, and
servants.

garden belonging to the company at the
which is one of the greatest beauties of
ce, and perhaps the most extraordinary
world, contains every fruit, flower, or
that is valuable or curious in every part
of

genus; and nature seems to have
producing extraordinary effects.
its muscles are like so many bu
and they are covered with a hid
in strength and thickness to that of
It is very curious and remarkable
of this species of buffalo should
so loose in the sockets, as to rattl

The wild beasts, however, mak
among the tame animals, and kil
merely for the sake of sucking the
generally leave the carcase untouc
the lion is the most formidable a
and usually prefers the blood of th
that of any other creature. The
attacks men with great fury; a
implacable enemy of the elepha
which it rips open with the horn
from its snout, and leaves the w
expire. Among the other wild

which is spotted and streaked, is
in in this country; and there is an
f wild-cats of different species, and
e variety of colours.

athered race, ostriches are remark-
ous; and so heavy that they are in-
ying, and using their wings only by
, skim along the ground. They are
l, and many of them are kept in the
s. The flamingo is a beautiful bird,
r than a swan, and has a neck pro-
longer; its bill is broad, and the
ible crooked, and bends very con-
ver the under one. Its neck and
white as snow, the upper part of the
rs are of a flame-colour, and the
lack. Its legs have an orange tinge,
ich longer than those of the stork.
-eater, or spoon-bill, is rather larger
, and has a long, straight, and broad
resembling a spoon. This bird is
ted by the natives, on account of its
serpents and other venomous crea-
knor-cock and knor-hen, however,
the most remarkable birds, with
country abounds, and serve as cen-
e rest of the winged tribes. No
hey discover a man, than they give
ing of the approach of danger, and
d noise, which seems to express the
! crack! on hearing which, the other
diately take wing and fly away. This
t the size of a common hen, and has
ers on the crown, but the rest are
with red, white, and ash-colour. It
and black beak, and yellow legs;

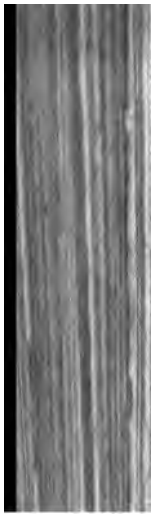
entirely of honey, and directs the
stores of the industrious bee; the
perfectly resembles the cuckoo; wi
species of wild and tame fowls, tha
to Europe.

There are great numbers of rep
which are perfectly innocent, and
most malignant nature. The asp
mon; and so is also the tree-serpe
ter reptile received its appellation
principally on the boughs of trees,
it darts at any living creature th
within its reach. It is about two y
and nearly an inch in thickness.
thirst-serpent, which is also to be
other parts of Africa, is often to
here. It is about three quarters
length, and has a broad neck an
The bite of this reptile causes an
flammation, which is speedily fo
unextinguishable thirst, unless cor

ones have the shape of a bean, and being applied to a wound will extract the poison; but their origin has been falsely ascribed to the hair-serpent, since they are certainly artificial productions. The middle of the stone is of a whitish, and the rest of a blue, colour. It adheres closely to the flesh, and having absorbed as much poison as it can contain, drops off, and is put into milk for the purpose of discharging itself. It is then repeatedly applied till all the poison be extracted, after which the wound will be soon healed.

Scorpions are so exceedingly numerous, that it is dangerous to remove any articles where these creatures are usually found. Their sting produces excruciating pain, but is seldom fatal, unless the proper and well-known modes of cure be unpardonably neglected. In short, no country in the world abounds more with living creatures, innocent as well as noxious.

The sea on this coast is plentifully stocked with fish, and other marine animals, some of which are unknown to Europeans. The torpedo or cramp-fish is frequently caught at the Cape, is of a circular form, and generally weighs about a quarter of a pound. The head does not project from the body; its eyes are small, and its mouth is shaped like a crescent, above which are two holes that are probably its nostrils. The back is of an orange colour, the belly white, the



stick feels his limbs cramped an
such a manner that he cannot
cularly those parts which are
This extreme torpidity seldom
than two minutes, but its effects
cease in less than half an hour.

During the months of May,
August, gold-fish are seen in p
near the Cape, but in no other
do they appear. These fish d
from those in China, and have
gold about each eye, and a s
back from the head to the tail.
about a foot and a half. The fle
colour, and of a delicious taste,
not only wholesome, but also n
ally in purifying the blood and j

The silver-fish caught at the
resemble carp in shape and fla
monly weigh about a pound ea

There are two kinds of brassems, the flesh of which is delicate and pleasant; and besides these, ses, muscles, crabs, and oysters, are found in undance; dolphins are frequently seen in the y after a strong gale of wind. A species of e asterias, or star-fish, and the paper nautilus e likewise common. These not unusually are und in the cabinets of European virtuosi.

Whales are numerous during the winter season l all the bays of Southern Africa, where they re caught with more facility than in the midst f the ocean. They seldom exceed sixty feet in ngth, and their bones are of little value; but each fish yields about ten tons of oil, they are eemed of sufficient consequence to attract the tention of a company which has been established within these few years, for the purpose of rrying on a fishery at Table Bay.

The shells are not very numerous in this part f the African coast; the most common are of ne univalve tribe; and as the peninsula is destiute of lime-stone, these are frequently collected nd reduced to lime.

To enter on an enumeration of the insects hat people this region, would be foreign to the esign of our work: to the inquisitive naturalist ney have often presented an ample field for reearch and examination. In a word, the country round the Cape is rich to exuberance, both animal and vegetable productions; a few of he latter we shall embrace this opportunity of articularizing, convinced that a description of ature never fails to interest, and to command ttention.

Though timber is extremely rare and expenve, little pains has been taken in the vicinity

of

and various others, which are c
purpose of fuel in great abundan

Various exotics might, no dou
fully cultivated here. Already, t
indigo, the sugar cane, tea and c
to be found in different parts of
seem to flourish as well as many
nous productions.

Two species of the wax plant
are abundant in the sandy flat
mulberry, the palma christi, and
grow in great luxuriance and ple

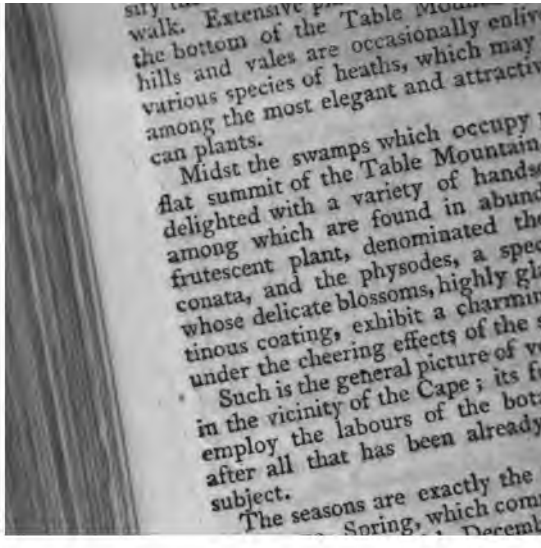
From the approximation of th
the cultivated plant of Europe,
surprise that the latter has nev
duced, since its success appears un
the colony is destitute of any veg
is fit to be applied to culinary pu

nonly divided into squares, and defended
the parching influence of the south-east
by cut hedges of quince, oak, and myrtle.
rley, the principal grain in the peninsula, is
ly raised in open grounds; but beyond the
ius, and along the western coast, grain is
vated to great advantage.

the close of the rainy season, which gene-
takes place in September, the plains be-
the Table Mountain and on the western
of Table Bay are beautifully enlivened with
irge othonna, which springs up in delight-
ixuriance from a verdant carpet of the creep-
rifolium melilotos. Equally numerous are
lowers, with a regular radiated corolla,
r of a fine yellow or the purest white, occa-
lly broken and diversified with violet and
green; while the oxalis cernua, varying its
ir through every tint, from the most bril-
red and purple down to the most unsullied
e, encreases the beauty of the charming
icape.

gain, when the beams of the sun are with-
n from the gay parterres, and the painted
ly of Flora begin to close their odoriferous
s, the modest ixia cinnamomea, which has
ined shut up and invisible under the meri-
day, begins to unfold its delicate blossoms,
perfumes the evening gale with the most re-
ing sweetness.

ie mororera, the iris, the gladiolus, and the
oliza, each furnish a variety of species, equal
ace and elegance to the ixia. The slopes
ie hills are richly covered and perfumed by
bundance of geraniums; and in the liliace-
class, the amaryllis attracts the notice of
r lover of vegetable nature.



ng the clear weather of winter; and
ier the difference is still more per-
en the head of the mountain is en-
a fleecy cloud, not inaptly termed
loth."

winds which blow here, the south-
th-west are the most powerful: the
tremely violent when the cloud rests
ountain, and generally predominates
d of August till the middle of May.
ommences about the end of May,
occasionally till the termination of
he approach of winter is generally
the subsidence of the winds, and
rance of the fleecy cloud. These to-
cceeded by heavy dews, thick fogs,
rthwesterly winds, accompanied by
ns of thunder, lightning, and rain.
ation of three days, however, the at-
enerally begins to brighten, and the
n the continent appear with their
in snow, and a light sprinkling of
seen about the head of the Table.
ts are always cool, though the morn-
metimes close and sultry: a south-
enerally springs up about the middle
and gradually dies away as evening
The general standard of the tempe-
ape Town, during the winter months,
degrees at sun-rise to sixty at noon;
middle of summer the thermometer
seventy to ninety.
ometer varies little compared with
erved in our climate. The south-
rarely occasion an alteration in the
tube

except such as are the r
habits.

END OF THE THIRTEENTH
FOURTH OF THE MO

ɔved Elementary Books for the Use f Schools and Young Perſons.

'owing list of modern and improved Elementary tises is addreſſed to the notice of intelligent Tu- nd Parents, as a valuable ſucceſſion and ſeries chool Books, by means of which much time and ce may be ſaved in the communication of Know- . The laudable deſign of the Authors of theſe ks has been to adapt them to the liberal and ex- ve views of modern Education; to render them lete and comprehenſive on their reſpective ſub- ; perfect in their ſtyle and arrangement; and ch a moderate ſize and price as accord with the tical buſineſs of Schools, and with the œconomi- views of Parents.

BIOGRAPHY.

IE BRITISH NEPOS, or MIRROR of YOUTH: ele& Lives of illuſtrious Britons, who have been diſ- ued for their Virtues, Talents, or remarkable Ad- ent in Life; written for Young Perſons, on the ob- rinciple—that Example is more powerful and more ing than Precept. By WILLIAM MAVOR, LL.D. f Hurley in Berkſhire. Price 4s. 6d. bound

ie LIVES of PLUTARCH, abridged, containing :s of the moſt illuſtrious characters of Greece anc by the ſame Author. Price 4s. 6d. bound.

ie UNIVERSAL BIOGRAPHICAL and HISTO- . DICTIONARY; being a faithful account of the ninent Perſons of all Ages and Countries, contain thouſand articles more than are to be found ir neral Biographical Dictionary in fifteen volumes.— Rev. JOHN WATKINS, LL.D. Price Half-a in boards

CRIPTURE BIOGRAPHY, or the Lives and Cha of the principal Perſonages recorded in the Sacre s, practically adapted to the inſtruction of Youth the uſe of private families.. By Dr. WATKINS s. 6d.

5. Th

lished with forty-six Copper-plat
dred and sixty-six Objects. By
4s. 6d. bound.

7. VISITS to the MENAGE
CAL GARDEN at PARIS, cor
pleasing view of animated natur
price 4s.

MANNERS AND KNOI WORL

8. The ELEMENTS of a P
containing all the valuable and
tion in the Letters of the late L
TO HIS SON, selected by GEO
Price 4s. 6d.

ELEMENTS OF THE GUAGI

9. An ENGLISH SPELLING
a progressive series of easy and
manner of BARBAULD, TRIMM
GUIN, &c. intended as a modern

Species of Poetry, and their Modes of Recitati
PRATT. Price 4s. 6d. in boards, or 5s. boun

12. POETRY for CHILDREN, consistin
partly original and partly selected, which may
ted to memory at an early age. By MISS AI
1s. 6d.

SHORT-HAND WRITIN

13. An UNIVERSAL and COMPLETE
SHORT-HAND WRITING, being the sam
been adopted by the Editors of the Encyclo
nica, and which is used in the Courts of Law
tropolis. By WILLIAM MAVOR, LL.D.
tion. Price 7s. 6d.

MUSIC.

14. A DICTIONARY of MUSIC; to whic
a familiar Introduction to the Science of Ha
THOMAS BUSBY, LL.D. In one Volum
8vo. Price 6s in boards.

This Work is offered to the public as a c
comprehensive Musical Dictionary. In boar
and private families it will be found of indispe
every young Lady beginning to practise; an
less generally received as a necessary append
Piano Forte, and to the Library of every prof
Theory and Practice of Music.

MODERN GEOGRAPHY

Price 10s. 6d. bound and lettered, decorated w
beautiful Copper-plates, representing the M
toms, and Dresses, of all Nations, and illu
new and improved Maps,

15. GEOGRAPHY for the USE of SCHO
plan so practical to Teachers, and so highly fa
Pupils, that it cannot fail to recommend itself
adoption, the moment it is seen.

It is divided into three parts:

1. A brief Grammar of Geography, drawn up
as possible, for the purpose of being committed

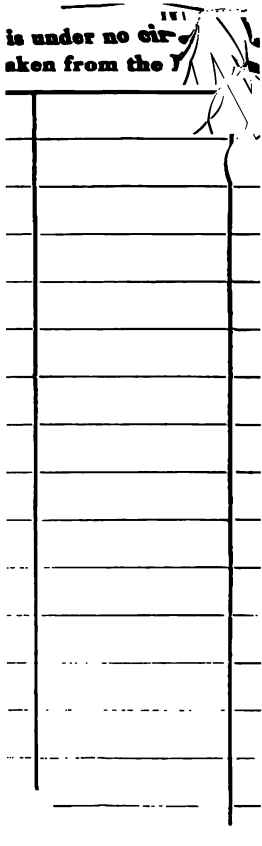
2. The Use of the Globes, with a variety o
and Exercises upon each Problem.

3. Full, circumstantial, and highly entertaini
of the Manners, Customs, Dresses, and Curio
Nations, illustrated with Fifty Copper-plates, a
Body of Facts which, for Entertainment and
are not exceeded in the entire Compass of Lit

MEDICAL FRIEND, containing pl
structions for the prevention and cure
ing to the last improvements and disco
of chapters on collateral subjects, com
relative to the Theory and Principles
necessary to be known by the priva
whole divested of scientific and technic
and adapted to the use of those he
have not had a classical or medical educ
ANDER THOMSON, M. D. Auth
sultations; of an Essay on the disease
a Treatise on the Nerves. In ONE t
price 5s. in boards, or 6s. bound; cont
press than any other Medical Work of
lar nature.

18. A PRACTICAL TREATISE
the most salutary and agreeable means
and HEALTH by ALIMENT and RE
to the various circumstances of Age, Co
mate; and including the application of
to the culinary Preparation of Food.
NISBET, M. D. In One Volume, p

19. A Concise View of all the m


is under no cir
aken from the